

## 序 言

学习英文最常遇到的一个问题,便是词汇量不足。一个词汇量不足的人,在英文听、写、说各方面的能力都会受到严重的限制,因此往往无法适当地与英美人士沟通;在参加考试时,更经常因为看不懂题目,而不知从何作答。

有鉴于此,我们特别为广大的英文读者编写了一系列的词汇丛书。从最基本的 Vocabulary Fundamental,到足以应付留学考试之需的 Vocabulary 22000,循序渐进,为您扎实地打好词汇基础,无论您正在校求学或已步入社会,都会发现本系列书籍就是您苦寻已久,增强英文实力的最佳利器。学校老师更可采用本系列书籍作为辅助教材,以弥补平日上课内容之不足。

一般均认为背单词是件既吃力、又往往成效不彰的苦差事,因而总是望之却步。本系列书籍的问世恰可打破以上观念。以下列出词汇系列丛书的各项特点:

1. 以“课”为单元,容易安排学习进度,也避免了背字典式学习方法的冗长与杂乱无章。
2. 每个单词均附有详细的国际音标、词性说明及中文解释。
3. 适当列出各单词的衍生词、同义词及反义词,以达到举一反三、事半功倍的效果。
4. 以例句说明单词的用法,各例句附有汉语译文,以便于参考。
5. 每一部分后均有习题,以加深对所学单词的印象;每一课后面附有效果检测,以评量对所学单词的理解程度,并增强活用单词的能力。

词汇量的增加绝非一蹴而就的,但是若能采用系统的方法,依旧可缩短增加词汇量所需的时间。因此,本系列丛书的读者,只要按部就班,循序渐进,必可在最短的时间内,获得最大的成效。并请切记**随时要活用所学的单词**,惟有如此,这些词汇才会确确实实地成为你自己的。

## Vocabulary Fundamental

1. 本书所列单词共计 1,300 个,加上各词的衍生词、同义词及反义词,则实际收录约 3,000 词,均为平时最常用、最容易接触到的单词。

2. 详细列出各词的国际音标、词性说明及中文解释,省却查字典的麻烦。中文解释是以该词最常用的意义为主,一词若有若干常用解释或词性,则一并列出。单词后面附有例句,以说明该词的用法;例句附有中文翻译,以便对照参考。

3. 每一课分为五个部分,以便于分段记忆。在课前有预备测验,每一部分之后有习题,课后有效果检测,可借助于重复测验来加深对单词的印象,并学习如何活用单词。

4. 本书共分为 24 课,建议进度为一天一课,如此便可在一个月內增加 3,000 个词汇。

编者

## 目 录

LESSON 1	1
LESSON 2	15
LESSON 3	29
LESSON 4	43
LESSON 5	57
LESSON 6	71
LESSON 7	86
LESSON 8	100
LESSON 9	114
LESSON 10	128
LESSON 11	141
LESSON 12	155
LESSON 13	169
LESSON 14	182
LESSON 15	197
LESSON 16	212
LESSON 17	227
LESSON 18	242
LESSON 19	257
LESSON 20	271
LESSON 21	285
LESSON 22	298
LESSON 23	312
LESSON 24	326
单词索引	339
本书所用国际音标符号对照表	350

## LESSON 1

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. When water \_\_\_\_\_, it is full of *bubbles*.  
(A) boils (B) freezes
2. Many people *resort* to the beaches in \_\_\_\_\_ weather.  
(A) cold (B) hot
3. Let's all *cooperate* to get the work done \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) quickly (B) slowly
4. He was \_\_\_\_\_ because his name was *omitted* from the list.  
(A) invited (B) not invited
5. They put the *blame* for the \_\_\_\_\_ on the driver of the car.  
(A) success (B) accident

## ◆ 解 答 ◆

1.A 2.B 3.A 4.B 5.B

## 《第一部分》

<p><b>abroad</b> [ə'brɔ:d] <i>adv.</i> 在国外 同 overseas</p>	<p>He lived <b>abroad</b> for many years; he knows several foreign languages. 他在国外住了许多年,懂好几种外语。</p>
---	---

<p><b>affect</b>[ə'fekt] <i>v.</i> 影响</p>	<p>The small amount of rain last year <b>affected</b> the growth of crops. 去年雨量少,影响了作物的生长。</p>
---	--

2 VOCABULARY FUNDAMENTAL 

**attend** [ə'tend] All children over seven must **attend** school.  
*v.* 上(学); 参加 七岁以上的小孩都得上学。  
*n.* attendance

**blame** [bleɪm] I have done my best, neither praise nor **blame**  
*n.* 责难 can affect me now.  
 compliment 我已尽了最大的努力, 赞扬或责难现在都影响不  
 了我。

**bubble** ['bʌbl] Children like to make **bubbles** with soap and  
*n.* 气泡 water.  
 孩子们喜欢用肥皂水做泡泡。

**cemetery** There are many tombs in the **cemetery**.  
 ['semɪtəri] 墓地里有许多坟墓。  
*n.* 墓地  
 graveyard

**commendation** He was given a **commendation** for bravery af-  
 [ˌkɒmən'deɪʃən] ter he saved the little children from the fire.  
*n.* 赞扬 他从火灾中救出孩子们后, 因为勇敢可嘉而受到  
 praise  blame 赞扬。

**conflict** Some people think that there is a great deal of  
 ['kɒnflɪkt] **conflict** between religion and science.  
*n.* 冲突; 争斗 有些人认为宗教与科学间有很大的冲突。  
 fight  
 reconciliation

**cooperate** The children **cooperated** with their teachers in  
 [kəʊ'ɒpəreɪt] keeping their classrooms clean.  
*v.* 合作 孩子们与老师合作, 保持教室清洁。  
*n.* cooperation  
*adj.* cooperative

<p><b>curious</b>                  ['kjuəriəs]                  adj. 好奇的                  同 inquisitive</p>	<p>I am <i>curious</i> to know what my teacher said to my mother.                  我很好奇, 想知道老师跟我母亲说了些什么。</p>
---	--

**Exercise 1.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The news of his mother's death \_\_\_\_\_ him deeply.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ is a place for burying the dead.
3. He is planning to go \_\_\_\_\_ next year for his study.
4. He doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ church very often.
5. If a child is \_\_\_\_\_, he is always asking questions.

**【解答】** 1. affected      2. Cemetery      3. abroad  
 4. attend                  5. curious

《第二部分》

<p><b>delicious</b>                  [dɪ'liʃəs]                  adj. 美味的                  同 sweet-tasting</p>	<p>We had some <i>delicious</i> cakes after dinner.                  我们在晚饭后吃了一些美味的蛋糕。</p>
--	---

<p><b>direct</b> [dɪ'rekt]                  v. 监督; 指导                  adj. 直接的                  同 conduct,                  command                  反 indirect</p>	<p>There was nobody to <i>direct</i> the workmen.                  没有人监督工人。                  Which is the most <i>direct</i> way to London?                  去伦敦最直接的路是哪一条?</p>
--	--

4 VOCABULARY FUNDAMENTAL 

<p><b>draw</b> [drɔ:]  <i>v.</i> 拉   drag, haul</p>	<p><i>Draw</i> your chair nearer to the table.            把你的椅子往桌子这儿拉近一点。</p>
<p><b>empire</b>            ['empaɪə(r)]  <i>n.</i> 帝国   realm</p>	<p>The United States was once a part of the British <i>Empire</i>.            美国曾一度是大英帝国的一部分。</p>
<p><b>event</b> [ɪ'vent]  <i>n.</i> 事件   accident,            happening</p>	<p>The discovery of America was a great <i>event</i>.            发现美洲是一件大事。</p>
<p><b>failure</b> ['feɪljə(r)]  <i>n.</i> 失败   success</p>	<p>Success came after many <i>failures</i>.            成功在多次的失败之后到来。</p>
<p><b>file</b> [faɪl]  <i>n.</i> 文卷档  <i>v.</i> 归档</p>	<p>Please put these letters in the main <i>file</i>.            请将这些文件放入文卷总档中。            The secretary <i>filed</i> the cards in order.            秘书将卡片依序归档。</p>
<p><b>frank</b> [fræŋk]  <i>adj.</i> 坦白的   candid, honest   deceitful,            dishonest</p>	<p>He was <i>frank</i> to admit that he hadn't studied the lesson.            他坦白承认没有学习那一课。</p>
<p><b>generate</b>            ['dʒenəreɪt]  <i>v.</i> 产生   produce, make</p>	<p>We know that heating water can <i>generate</i> steam.            我们知道将水加热可以产生蒸汽。</p>

**halt**[hɔ:lt] | The soldiers **halted** for a rest.  
*v.* 停止前进 | 士兵们停止前进,以休息片刻。

**Exercise 1.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Her graduation from college was a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ I did not want to miss.
2. What \_\_\_\_\_ food you have cooked!
3. The picnic was a \_\_\_\_\_ because it rained.
4. If you want my \_\_\_\_\_ opinion, I don't think the plan will succeed.
5. The company \_\_\_\_\_ operations during the strike.

**【解答】** 1. event    2. delicious    3. failure    4. frank  
 5. halted

《第三部分》

**horn**[hɔ:n] | A goat has two **horns** on its head.  
*n.* 角 | 山羊的头上有两只角。

**individual** | A teacher can't give **individual** attention if his  
 [ˌɪndɪˈvɪdʒʊəl] class is large.  
*adj.* 个别的 | 如果班上的人数众多,老师就不能个别地注意到  
 每一个学生。  
*n.* 个人 | The interests of society are more important  
 同 person than the interests of the **individual**.  
 社会利益比个人利益要重要得多。

6 VOCABULARY FUNDAMENTAL 

<p><b>interval</b> [ 'ɪntəvəl ] <i>n.</i> (时间的)间隔</p>	<p>There is a long <i>interval</i> before he replied. 他隔了很长的一段时间才回答。</p>
<p><b>knot</b>[nɒt] <i>n.</i> 绳结</p>	<p>The <i>knots</i> of your package must be tied tightly. 你包裹上的绳结必须扎紧。</p>
<p><b>liberal</b>[ 'lɪbərəl ] <i>adj.</i> 1. 自由主义的 2. 通才的 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> professional</p>	<p>He is <i>liberal</i> in his view on government. 他对政体的看法是属于自由主义的。 They want their child to have a <i>liberal</i> education. 他们要他们的孩子接受通才教育。</p>
<p><b>magnificent</b> [ mæg' nɪfɪsənt ] <i>adj.</i> 华丽的 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> grand, splendid <i>n.</i> magnificence</p>	<p>The king was wearing a <i>magnificent</i> gold crown. 国王戴着华丽的金冠。</p>
<p><b>mental</b>[ 'mentəl ] <i>adj.</i> 心理的 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> physical</p>	<p>Keeping <i>mental</i> health is very important in modern society. 在现代社会中,保持心理健康是非常重要的。</p>
<p><b>momentary</b> [ 'məʊməntəri ] <i>adj.</i> 暂时的 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> transient <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> everlasting</p>	<p>Her feeling of danger was only <i>momentary</i>; it soon passed. 她的危险感只是暂时的,很快就消失了。</p>
<p><b>neutral</b> [ 'nju:trəl ] <i>adj.</i> 中立的</p>	<p>He remained <i>neutral</i> in the argument between his two friends. 他在两个朋友的争辩中,保持中立。</p>

**omit** [əv'mɪt] | He made many mistakes in spelling by **omitting** letters.  
*v.* 遗漏, 删除 | 他因漏掉字母而犯了许多拼写上的错误。

**Exercise 1.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. We did not think that you would come here, because your name was \_\_\_\_\_ from the list.
2. The judge in a court must be \_\_\_\_\_ in a trial.
3. Each \_\_\_\_\_ leaf on the tree is different.
4. There is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of a week between Christmas and New Year's Day.
5. There are probably as many kinds of \_\_\_\_\_ illnesses as there are kinds of physical illnesses.

【解答】 1. omitted      2. neutral      3. individual  
 4. interval      5. mental

《第四部分》

**peacock** | A **peacock** can fly only a short distance.  
 ['pi:kək] | 孔雀只能飞很短的距离。  
*n.* 孔雀

**pioneer** | John Glenn was a **pioneer** in space travel.  
 [ˌpɪəɪə'nɪə(r)] | 约翰·葛伦是太空旅行的先驱者。  
*n.* 先驱者  
 同 forerunner

**pray** [preɪ] | I will **pray** to God for your safe return.  
*v.* 祈祷 | 我会向上帝祈祷你的平安归来。

8 VOCABULARY FUNDAMENTAL 

<p><b>pronounce</b> [prə'naʊns] <i>v.</i> 1. 读……的音 <i>n.</i> pronunciation 2. 宣告 <i>n.</i> pronouncement</p>	<p>The teacher <b>pronounced</b> each word slowly. 老师把每一个字的音都读得很慢。</p> <p>The doctor <b>pronounced</b> that the man was dead. 医生宣告那个男人死了。</p>
<p><b>race</b>[reɪs] <i>n.</i> 1. 种族 2. 比赛</p>	<p>There are mainly three kinds of <b>races</b> in the world: the white <b>race</b>, the black <b>race</b> and the yellow <b>race</b>. 世界上有三个主要的种族: 白种人, 黑种人和黄种人。</p> <p>Please tell me which horse won the <b>race</b>. 请告诉我哪一匹马赢得了比赛。</p>
<p><b>relative</b> ['relatɪv] <i>n.</i> 亲戚 <i>adj.</i> 相对的  absolute</p>	<p>He has many <b>relatives</b> in the United States. 他在美国有很多亲戚。</p> <p>East is a <b>relative</b> term, for example, France is east of England but west of Italy. 东方是个相对的名词, 譬如说, 法国在英国的东方, 却在意大利的西方。</p>
<p><b>resort</b>[rɪ'zɔ:t] <i>v.</i> 1. 常去 2. 求助</p>	<p>When we were high school students, we <b>resorted</b> to the restaurant. 我们上高中时, 常去那家餐馆。</p> <p>He always <b>resorted</b> to asking his friends for money. 他总是向朋友借钱。</p>
<p><b>rub</b>[rʌb] <i>v.</i> 摩; 擦</p>	<p>He <b>rubbed</b> his hands together to warm up. 他摩擦双手以取暖。</p>

**shadow** [ 'ʃædəʊ ] | He walked along in the *shadows* hoping no one  
*n.* 阴暗处 | would recognize him.  
 ☐ shade | 他沿着阴暗处走, 希望没有人会认出他。

**situation** | I'm in a difficult *situation* and I don't know  
 [ ɪsɪtʃʊ'eɪʃən ] | what to do.  
*n.* 情势 | 我处在困境中, 不知道该怎么办。  
 ☐ condition, case

**Exercise 1.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. People of many \_\_\_\_\_ settled in the United States.
2. My uncle is my nearest \_\_\_\_\_.
3. With the light behind him, his \_\_\_\_\_ could be seen on the wall.
4. The doctor is regarded as a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ in operating human hearts.
5. There is nothing we can do now but \_\_\_\_\_ to God for help.

【解答】 1. races 2. relative 3. shadow 4. pioneer  
 5. pray

《第五部分》

**sore** [ sə:(r) ] | His *sore* leg made walking difficult.  
*adj.* 疼痛的 | 腿部疼痛令他举步维艰。  
 ☐ aching, painful

**spread** [ spred ] | His sister *spread* a cloth on the table.  
*v.* 覆盖; 铺(桌面) | 他的姐姐把一块桌布铺在桌上。

**stomach** [ 'stʌmək ] | It is unwise to swim on a full *stomach*.  
*n.* 胃 | 饱腹时游泳是不明智的。

<p><b>suitcase</b>          ['sju:tkeɪs]  <i>n.</i> 手提箱</p>	<p>He took two <i>suitcases</i> with him on the trip.          他旅行时带着两个手提箱。</p>
<p><b>talent</b> ['tælənt]  <i>n.</i> 天才</p>	<p>The girl has a <i>talent</i> for music.          那女孩有音乐的天才。</p>
<p><b>throne</b> [θrəʊn]  <i>n.</i> 王位</p>	<p>He was only 15 years old when he came to the <i>throne</i>. 他登基时只有 15 岁。</p>
<p><b>transfer</b>          ['trænsfə(r)]  <i>n.</i> 调职          [træns'fɜ:(r)]  <i>v.</i> 转移</p>	<p>He has asked for a <i>transfer</i> to another job.          他已要求调职。          The football player is hoping to <i>transfer</i> to another team soon.          该足球队员希望不久以后能调到另一队。</p>
<p><b>usage</b> ['ju:zɪdʒ]  <i>n.</i> 使用</p>	<p>Machines soon wear out under rough <i>usage</i>.          机器使用不小心很快就会磨损。</p>
<p><b>vowel</b> ['vaʊəl]  <i>n.</i> 元音字母          ☒ consonant</p>	<p>The <i>vowels</i> in the English language are represented by a, e, i, o, u and, sometimes, y.          英文中的元音字母以 a, e, i, o, u 为代表, 有时再加上 y。</p>
<p><b>withdraw</b>          [wɪð'drɔ:]  <i>v.</i> 缩回; 撤销</p>	<p>He quickly <i>withdrew</i> his hand from the hot stove.          他迅速地把手从热火炉上缩回。</p>

**Exercise 1.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

- \_\_\_\_\_ are more difficult to pronounce than consonants.
- It is not wise to work on an empty \_\_\_\_\_.
- The general decided to \_\_\_\_\_ the troops from the present

position.

4. The boy showed a real \_\_\_\_\_ for painting.  
 5. This farm has been \_\_\_\_\_ from father to son for generations.

**【解答】** 1. Vowels 2. stomach 3. withdraw 4. talent  
 5. transferred

### 效果检测

*Exercise 1.6* 找出一个与其他三个不相关的词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. (A) compliment (B) commendation  
 (C) approach (D) praise
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. (A) attend (B) draw (C) haul (D) drag
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. (A) candid (B) curious (C) frank (D) honest
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. (A) interval (B) omit (C) break (D) pause
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. (A) splendid (B) neutral  
 (C) magnificent (D) grand
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. (A) race (B) situation  
 (C) condition (D) case
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. (A) aching (B) painful (C) delicious (D) sore
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. (A) conflict (B) event (C) struggle (D) fight
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. (A) obey (B) command  
 (C) conduct (D) direct
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. (A) happening (B) event  
 (C) incident (D) pioneer

**【解答】** 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. B  
 6. A 7. C 8. B 9. A 10. D

**Exercise 1.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词:

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. 影响  
(A) conflict (B) cooperate (C) affect (D) attend
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. 责备  
(A) blame (B) responsibility  
(C) stomach (D) talent
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. 美味的  
(A) incurious (B) delicious (C) dull (D) candid
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. 先驱者  
(A) bubble (B) consonant (C) peacock (D) pioneer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. 亲戚  
(A) neutral (B) relative (C) uncle (D) resort

**【解答】** 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. B

**Exercise 1.8** 找出一个与斜体词的意义相反的单词:

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. *compliment* (A) conflict (B) blame  
(C) success (D) failure
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. *indifferent* (A) delicious (B) dull  
(C) curious (D) magnificent
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. *deceitful* (A) dull (B) grand  
(C) neutral (D) frank
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. *momentary* (A) everlasting (B) transient  
(C) liberal (D) important
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. *withdraw* (A) haul (B) draw  
(C) advance (D) cooperate

【解答】 1. B    2. C    3. D    4. A    5. C

**Exercise 1.9** 完整拼出下列句中所欠缺的单词：

1. Although he was a f \_\_\_\_\_ e at school, he became a successful man later. (失败者)
2. He was so c \_\_\_\_\_ s to know what was in the letter that he opened it, even though it was addressed to his sister. (好奇的)
3. Will you be quite f \_\_\_\_\_ k with me about this matter? (坦白的)
4. In their school they have an i \_\_\_\_\_ l of ten minutes for recess. (间隔的时间)
5. The police watched the cafe to which the robber was known to r \_\_\_\_\_ t. (常去)

【解答】 1. failure    2. curious    3. frank    4. interval  
5. resort

**Exercise 1.10** 找出一个与句中斜体词的意义最接近的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Steam can *generate* electricity by turning an electric generator.  
(A) change    (B) produce    (C) stop    (D) spread
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. He earned high *commendation* from the people for his bravery.  
(A) reward    (B) pride  
(C) praise    (D) consideration
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The policeman *halted* the speeding car to see if the driver was drunk.

14 VOCABULARY FUNDAMENTAL 

(A) stopped (B) found (C) chased (D) caught  
\_\_\_\_\_ 4. I have a *sore* throat from cold.

(A) strong (B) weak (C) clear (D) painful  
\_\_\_\_\_ 5. I will show you the *magnificent* palace of the king.

(A) grand (B) ancient (C) dull (D) colorful

**【解答】** 1. B    2. C    3. A    4. D    5. A

LESSON 2

预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. The rider *cursed* his \_\_\_\_\_ horse.  
 (A) great (B) bad
2. An *absolute* ruler can do just as \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) people tell him (B) he pleases
3. There is usually a *ceremony* when a new building is \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) opened (B) destroyed
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ was sent to him by *freight*.  
 (A) letter (B) box
5. The *peak* of the roof is the \_\_\_\_\_ part of the house.  
 (A) highest (B) lowest

◆ 解 答 ◆  
 1. B 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. A

《第一部分》

<p><b>absolute</b>                  ['æbsəlu:t]                  adj. 绝对的</p>	<p>He is a man of <b>absolute</b> honesty.                  他是个绝对诚实的人。</p>
---	--

<p><b>agency</b>                  ['eidʒənsɪ]                  n. 经销处</p>	<p>The Ford Company has <b>agencies</b> all over the country.                  福特公司在全国都有经销处。</p>
---	--

<p><b>attitude</b> [ 'ætɪtʃu:d ] n. 态度</p>	<p>He took a sympathetic <b>attitude</b> toward my situation. 他对我的境遇抱同情的态度。</p>
<p><b>blank</b>[ blæŋk ] adj. 空白的 同 empty</p>	<p>Please write your name in the <b>blank</b> space at the top of the page. 请把你的名字写在此页上端的空白处。</p>
<p><b>bulk</b>[ bʌlk ] n. 堆; 容量 同 volume</p>	<p>A vast <b>bulk</b> of coal is still stored in the basement. 地下室中仍储有大量的煤堆。</p>
<p><b>ceremony</b> [ 'serɪməʊni ] n. 典礼</p>	<p>Their marriage <b>ceremony</b> was performed in the church. 他们的结婚典礼在教堂举行。</p>
<p><b>commerce</b> [ 'kɒmə:s ] n. 贸易 adj. commercial 同 trade</p>	<p>Our country has grown rich because of its <b>commerce</b> with other nations. 我国由于与别国间的贸易而致富。</p>
<p><b>confuse</b> [ kən'fju:z ] v. 混淆 n. confusion 同 embarrass, puzzle</p>	<p>Even their own mother sometimes <b>confused</b> the twins. 即使是双胞胎自己的母亲, 有时候也会把两个孩子搞混。</p>
<p><b>copper</b>[ 'kɒpə(r) ] n. 铜</p>	<p><b>Copper</b> is easily shaped into thin sheet or fine wire. 铜易于塑成薄板或细丝。</p>

<p><b>curse</b>[kɜ:s]</p> <p>v. 诅咒</p>	<p>He <b>cursed</b> the poor waitress who had spilled soup on him.</p> <p>他咒骂那个把汤倒在他身上的可怜女招待。</p>
--	---

**Exercise 2.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. He stood there in a threatening \_\_\_\_\_.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ is an excellent conductor of heat and electricity.
3. He \_\_\_\_\_ when a car almost hit him.
4. Long ago some rulers had \_\_\_\_\_ power.
5. If you try to learn too many things at the same time you may get \_\_\_\_\_.

【解答】 1. attitude 2. Copper 3. cursed 4. absolute  
5. confused

《第二部分》

<p><b>delight</b>[di'laɪt]</p> <p>n. 娱乐;愉快</p> <p>同 pleasure</p>	<p>Moving pictures give great <b>delight</b> to millions of people.</p> <p>电影娱乐了数以百万的人们。</p>
--	--

<p><b>disappear</b></p> <p>[ˌdɪsə'piə(r)]</p> <p>v. 消失</p>	<p>The little boy <b>disappeared</b> around the corner.</p> <p>那小男孩在街角处消失。</p>
--	--

<p><b>drift</b>[drɪft]</p> <p>n. v. 漂流</p>	<p>The boat was taken out to sea by the <b>drift</b> of the tide.</p> <p>小船被潮流冲到外海。</p>
--	---

<b>employ</b> [ɪm'plɔɪ] <i>v.</i> 雇用	That big factory <b>employs</b> many workers. 那家大工厂雇用了许多工人。
<b>evidence</b> ['eɪvɪdəns] <i>n.</i> 证据 <i>adj.</i> evident <i>adv.</i> evidently	When the police arrived, he had already destroyed all the <b>evidence</b> . 当警察到达时, 他已毁掉了所有的证据。
<b>faculty</b> ['fækəltɪ] <i>n.</i> 1. 能力 2. (大学等的) 教职员	John has the <b>faculty</b> to learn languages easily. 约翰有迅速学会语言的能力。 That will be discussed in the next <b>faculty</b> meeting. 那将会在下一次的教职员会议上讨论。
<b>financial</b> [faɪ'nænʃəl] <i>adj.</i> 经济上的 <i>n.</i> finance	Before he decided to study abroad, he has to solve <b>financial</b> problems. 在他决定出国读书前, 必须先解决经济上的问题。
<b>freight</b> [fret] <i>n.</i> 货物  cargo	This aircraft company deals with <b>freight</b> only; it has no travel service. 这家航空公司只经营货运, 而没有旅游服务。
<b>generous</b> ['dʒenərəs] <i>adj.</i> 慷慨的 <i>n.</i> generosity	It was very <b>generous</b> of them to share their meal with their poor neighbors. 他们愿意让贫苦的邻人共享餐食, 甚为慷慨。
<b>handy</b> ['hændɪ] <i>adj.</i> 便利的  convenient	There were <b>handy</b> shelves near the kitchen sink. 厨房的水槽边有便利的架子。

**Exercise 2.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. He was very \_\_\_\_\_ in his treatment of the captives.
2. He has a great \_\_\_\_\_ for arithmetic.
3. The city of London is a great \_\_\_\_\_ center in Europe.
4. The steel manufacturing company \_\_\_\_\_ most of the young men in town.
5. This \_\_\_\_\_ must be carefully handled when loading.

**【解答】** 1. generous      2. faculty      3. financial  
4. employs      5. freight

《第三部分》

<p><b>horrible</b> [ 'hɒrəbl ] adj. 可怕的 n. horror</p>	<p>I have never seen such a <b>horrible</b> car accident. 我从未见过如此可怕的车祸。</p>
---	---

<p><b>industrious</b> [ in 'dʌstriəs ] adj. 勤劳的</p>	<p>An <b>industrious</b> student usually has good grades. 勤奋的学生通常有好成绩。</p>
---	--

<p><b>intimate</b> [ 'ɪntɪmət ] adj. 亲密的 n. intimacy adv. intimately</p>	<p>Although my brother knew many people, he had few <b>intimate</b> friends. 虽然我兄弟认识许多人,但亲密的朋友却很少。</p>
--	--

<p><b>knowledge</b> [ 'nɒlɪdʒ ] n. 了解; 学识</p>	<p>A baby has no <b>knowledge</b> of good and evil. 婴儿不懂得善恶。</p>
---	--

**liberty** ['libəti] | They fought to defend their *liberty* against the  
*n.* 自由 | invaders.  
 他们为保卫自由而抵抗侵略者。

**majesty** ['mædʒɪsti] | They were inspired by the *majesty* of the  
*n.* 庄严 | snow-covered mountains.  
 他们从积雪山脉的庄严气氛中获得启示。  
 同 greatness,  
 dignity

**mention** ['menʃən] | Do not *mention* the terrible accident before the  
*v.* 提起 | little children.  
 在小孩面前, 不要提起那件可怕的意外。

**monument** ['mɒnjumənt] | The ruins of the castle is an ancient *monu-*  
*n.* 纪念物 | *ment*, which the government pays money to  
 preserve. 城堡的废墟是古代的纪念物, 政府花钱  
 来保存它。

**nickname** ['nikneɪm] | He got the *nickname* "Fatty" because he was  
*n.* 绰号 | very fat.  
 他非常胖, 因而得到一个“胖子”的绰号。

**onion** ['ʌnjən] | *Onion* has a very strong smell and taste.  
*n.* 洋葱 | 洋葱的气味和味道很浓烈。

**Exercise 2.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. He is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ student and deserves good grades.
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the Niagara Falls attracts a number of visitors.
3. I heard many \_\_\_\_\_ stories from my grandfather when I was young.

4. She opened the cage and gave the bird its \_\_\_\_\_.
5. He has a good \_\_\_\_\_ of French history.

【解答】 1. industrious      2. majesty      3. horrible  
4. liberty                      5. knowledge

《第四部分》

**peak**[pi:k] | The mountain **peak** is covered with snow all  
n. 山顶 | year round.  
同 summit | 山顶终年覆盖着雪。  
反 foot

**pit**[pit] | Water collected in the **pit** left when the old  
n. 坑 | trees were uprooted.  
同 hole | 老树被连根拔起后留下的坑会积水。

**preach**[pri:tʃ] | Many people went to church to hear him  
v. 传教 | **preach**.  
许多人到教堂听他传教。

**proof**[pru:f] | We must wait for better **proof** before we be-  
n. 证据 | lieve.  
v. prove | 在我们相信以前, 必须等待更有力的证据。

**rag**[ræg] | She wiped her boots with a **rag**.  
n. 破布 | 她用破布擦皮靴。  
adj. ragged

<b>release</b> [rɪ'li:s] <i>v.</i> 释放  <i>hold</i>	After he was <b>released</b> from prison, he came home directly. 他被释放出狱后,立刻回家去了。
<b>responsibility</b> [rɪs,pɒnsə'bɪlətɪ] <i>n.</i> 责任 <i>adj.</i> responsible	Now that you are 13, you should have more sense of <b>responsibility</b> . 你已经 13 岁了,应该有更多的责任感。
<b>rude</b> [ru:d] <i>adj.</i> 不礼貌的  <i>impolite</i>	It is <b>rude</b> to stare at people or to point with a finger. 瞪着别人或用手指着别人,都是不礼貌的。
<b>scorn</b> [skɔ:n] <i>n.</i> 轻视 <i>v.</i> 不屑;轻视	We feel <b>scorn</b> for a traitor. 我们蔑视卖国贼。
<b>shallow</b> ['ʃæləʊ] <i>adj.</i> 浅的	The lake is too <b>shallow</b> for swimming. 那湖太浅,无法游泳。

**Exercise 2.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Do you have any \_\_\_\_\_ that you weren't there at 9 o'clock last night?
2. The nurse will be \_\_\_\_\_ from duty at 7 o'clock.
3. Most pupils feel \_\_\_\_\_ for those who cheat in the exam.
4. He \_\_\_\_\_ that God would soon destroy the evil world.
5. Don't be so \_\_\_\_\_ to your teacher.

**【解答】** 1. proof 2. released 3. scorn 4. preached  
5. rude

《第五部分》

<p><b>soul</b> [səʊl]  <i>n.</i> 灵魂            同 spirit 反 body</p>	<p>They were praying for the <b>souls</b> of the dead.            他们正为死者的灵魂祈祷。</p>
<p><b>sprinkle</b>            ['sprɪŋkl]  <i>v.</i> 撒; 洒</p>	<p>He <b>sprinkled</b> sand along the icy path.            他沿着结冰的路撒砂子。</p>
<p><b>stoop</b> [stʊ:p]  <i>v.</i> 弯腰            同 bend</p>	<p>He <b>stooped</b> to pick up the paper.            他俯身捡纸。</p>
<p><b>sum</b> [sʌm]  <i>n.</i> 1. 金额            2. 和; 总额</p>	<p>He paid the <b>sum</b> of \$ 10 for a new bag.            他以 10 美元的价格买了一个新袋子。            The <b>sum</b> of 2 and 3 is 5.            2 和 3 之和为 5。</p>
<p><b>talkative</b>            ['tɔ:kətɪv]  <i>adj.</i> 多嘴的</p>	<p>No man likes <b>talkative</b> woman.            没有男人喜欢多嘴的女人。</p>
<p><b>throughout</b>            [θru:ə'au:t]  <i>adv.</i> 全部地  <i>prep.</i> 全; 遍及</p>	<p>The woodwork in the house was rotten <b>throughout</b>.            这间屋内的木制品全部腐朽了。            His name is famous <b>throughout</b> the world.            全世界都知道他的名字。</p>
<p><b>transport</b>            [træns'pɔ:t]  <i>v.</i> 运送  <i>n.</i> transportation</p>	<p>Wheat is <b>transported</b> from the farms to the mills.            小麦从农场运送至面粉加工厂。</p>



- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. clear *evidence*  
 (A) proof (B) knowledge  
 (C) situation (D) agency
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. a bulk of *freight*  
 (A) weight (B) surprise (C) failure (D) cargo
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. a *handy* little box  
 (A) relative (B) heavy (C) convenient (D) cheap
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. a *horrible* accident  
 (A) dangerous (B) ghastly (C) sore (D) big
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. the *majesty* of the mountains  
 (A) grandeur (B) faculty (C) monument (D) honor
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. the *peak* of a mountain  
 (A) foot (B) summit (C) height (D) horn
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. *rude* remarks  
 (A) loud (B) impolite (C) direct (D) candid
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. to *sprinkle* water on the road  
 (A) scatter (B) draw (C) drink (D) gather
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. large *sum* of money  
 (A) spending (B) peak (C) amount (D) resort

【解答】 1. B    2. A    3. D    4. C    5. B  
 6. A    7. B    8. B    9. A    10. C

**Exercise 2.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. 撒  
 (A) pour (B) halt  
 (C) scorn (D) sprinkle
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. 枯萎



- (C) cooperation (D) respect
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. *shallow*  
 (A) delightful (B) shade  
 (C) deep (D) delicious
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. *soul*  
 (A) straight (B) body  
 (C) haul (D) grand
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. *absolute*  
 (A) relative (B) present  
 (C) intimate (D) diligent
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. *delight*  
 (A) pleasure (B) sorrow  
 (C) horror (D) scorn

**【解答】** 1. C 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. D  
 6. D 7. C 8. B 9. A 10. B

**Exercise 2.9** 完整拼出下列句中所欠缺的单词：

1. It is r \_\_\_\_\_ e to say you don't like hot food, when she spends so long preparing it. (不礼貌的)
2. He seemed to s \_\_\_\_\_ n women and never married. (藐视)
3. He becomes very t \_\_\_\_\_ e when he gets drunk. (多话的)
4. His a \_\_\_\_\_ e toward school changed from dislike to great enthusiasm. (态度)
5. He is a member of the college f \_\_\_\_\_ y. (教职员)

**【解答】** 1. rude 2. scorn 3. talkative 4. attitude  
 5. faculty

**Exercise 2.10** 选出最符合句意的一个单词:

1. We need a great \_\_\_\_\_ of coal for this coming winter.  
(A) empire (B) pit (C) bubble (D) bulk
2. To his great \_\_\_\_\_ he passed the examination easily.  
(A) delight (B) despair (C) faculty (D) convenience
3. There was not enough \_\_\_\_\_ to prove him guilty of crime.  
(A) faculty (B) evidence (C) conflict (D) police
4. Though he didn't have much money to give, he was very \_\_\_\_\_ with his money.  
(A) curious (B) magnificent (C) generous (D) neutral
5. They built a \_\_\_\_\_ in memory of Abraham Lincoln.  
(A) monument (B) cemetery (C) freight (D) majesty

**【解答】** 1. D 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. A

**Exercise 2.11** 将题前的斜体词转换为适当的词性,填入空格内:

1. *horrible* The little girl has a \_\_\_\_\_ of snakes and spiders.
2. *intimate* The \_\_\_\_\_ with which the two friends talked showed how fond they were of each other.
3. *confuse* If you write more clearly, you will prevent the \_\_\_\_\_ of your readers.
4. *utter* His crazy \_\_\_\_\_ disappointed everyone around him.
5. *proof* In order to \_\_\_\_\_ the servant's honesty, she left a bag containing money on the table.

**【解答】** 1. horror 2. intimacy 3. confusion  
4. utterance 5. prove

LESSON 3

预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. My feet were *damp* from walking home in the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) sun (B) rain
2. When he learned that he had \_\_\_\_\_ the test, he felt *relieved*.  
 (A) passed (B) failed
3. He could not resist the *attraction* of a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ girl.  
 (A) pretty (B) ugly
4. The woman showed *mercy* to the hungry beggar and gave him \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) no food (B) some food
5. \_\_\_\_\_ are *tame* animals.  
 (A) Cows and hens (B) Tigers and lions

◆ 解 答 ◆

1.B 2.A 3.A 4.B 5.A

《第一部分》

<p><b>academic</b>                  [ˌækəˈdemɪk]                  adj. 学校的                  同 scholastic</p>	<p>The <b>academic</b> year begins when school opens in September.                  学年是从学校九月份开学时开始。</p>
--	---

<p><b>ahead</b> [əˈhed]                  adv. 超过；在前</p>	<p>Tom was a quick walker, so he soon got <b>ahead</b> of the others.                  汤姆走路很快，所以不久他就走到别人前面了。</p>
---	--

<b>attraction</b> [ə'trækʃən] <i>n.</i> 诱惑 <i>v.</i> attract	He cannot resist the <b>attraction</b> of the sea in hot weather. 在炎热的天气里,他无法抵抗海的诱惑。
<b>blaze</b> [bleiz] <i>n.</i> 火焰 同 flame	I put some wood on the fire and it soon burst into a <b>blaze</b> . 我把一些木柴放在火中,很快就发出炽焰。
<b>challenge</b> ['tʃælɪndʒ] <i>v.</i> 邀请比赛	I <b>challenged</b> him to a game of tennis. 我邀请他参加网球比赛。
<b>commit</b> [kə'mɪt] <i>v.</i> 1. 犯;做 2. 委托 <i>n.</i> commitment	A man who steals <b>commits</b> a crime. 偷窃的人犯罪。 He <b>committed</b> himself to the doctor's care. 他将自己交给医生。
<b>congress</b> ['kɒŋɡres] <i>n.</i> 立法机关 同 parliament, assembly	In some countries, the <b>congress</b> is composed of a Senate and a House of Representatives. 有些国家的立法机关是由参议院和众议院组成的。
<b>correction</b> [kə'rekʃən] <i>n.</i> 改正 <i>v.</i> correct	Teachers usually make <b>corrections</b> in red ink. 老师通常用红墨水进行批改。
<b>damp</b> [dæmp] <i>adj.</i> 潮湿的 同 wet, moist	If you sleep between <b>damp</b> sheets, you will probably catch cold. 如果你睡在潮湿的被单里,就可能着凉。

<p><b>demand</b> [dɪ'mɑ:nd] v. 需要</p>	<p>This sort of work <b>demand</b>s great patience. 这种工作需要很大的耐心。</p>
---	--

**Exercise 3.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Our school \_\_\_\_\_ the neighboring school's team to a game of football last week.
2. In the U. S. A., the \_\_\_\_\_ is the law-making body, consisting of the Senate and the House of Representatives.
3. If you fall into a river your clothes will be wet; if you walk in the rain for a short time they will be \_\_\_\_\_.
4. History and French are \_\_\_\_\_ subjects; typewriting and book-keeping are commercial subjects.
5. Columbus was \_\_\_\_\_ of his time in his belief that the world was round.

**【解答】** 1. challenged      2. Congress      3. damp  
4. academic              5. ahead

《第二部分》

<p><b>disappoint</b> [ˌdɪsə'pɔɪnt] v. 使失望 n. disappointment</p>	<p>I was <b>disappointed</b> when I heard you couldn't come to the party. 当我听说你不能来参加聚会时,感到很失望。</p>
---	--

<p><b>drown</b>[draʊn] v. 淹死</p>	<p>The fisherman almost got <b>drowned</b> when his boat was overturned. 当渔夫的船翻覆时,他几乎被淹死。</p>
--------------------------------------	---

<p><b>encourage</b> [ɪn'kʌrɪdʒ] v. 鼓励 同 inspire</p>	<p>The teacher's praise <i>encouraged</i> the students to study hard. 老师的称赞鼓励学生们更加用功。</p>
<p><b>evident</b> ['evidənt] adj. 明显的 n. evidence</p>	<p>It is now <i>evident</i> that if I don't study hard, I will fail the course. 现在情况很明显, 如果我不努力, 我这一科就会不及格。</p>
<p><b>fable</b>['feɪbl] n. 寓言</p>	<p>He read stories to the children from an old book of <i>fables</i>. 他从一本旧的寓言书里念故事给孩子们听。</p>
<p><b>firm</b>[fɜ:m] adj. 坚硬的</p>	<p>We build houses on <i>firm</i> ground. 我们在坚硬的土地上盖房子。</p>
<p><b>frequent</b> ['fri:kwənt] adj. 常有的 n. frequency</p>	<p>Sudden rainstorms are <i>frequent</i> on this coast. 这里的海岸常有突然的暴风雨。</p>
<p><b>genius</b>['dʒi:niəs] n. 天才</p>	<p>Important discoveries and inventions are usually made by men of <i>genius</i>. 重要的发现和发明通常是天才的人所为。</p>
<p><b>harbor</b>['hɑ:bə(r)] n. 港</p>	<p>The ship is in the <i>harbor</i> of New York. 那船停在纽约港中。</p>
<p><b>howl</b>[haʊl] v. 咆哮 同 yell, shout</p>	<p>The dogs were <i>howling</i> at the stranger. 狗正向那陌生人咆哮着。</p>

**Exercise 3.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. He jumped into the river and saved the \_\_\_\_\_ man.
2. It is not a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ but a real story.
3. The cheers of their school-mates \_\_\_\_\_ the players to try to win the game for the school.
4. He was very \_\_\_\_\_ when I said he had to stay at home on Sunday.
5. The little girl's joy was \_\_\_\_\_ when she saw the present her father had bought for her.

【解答】 1. drowning      2. fable      3. encouraged  
4. disappointed      5. evident

《第三部分》

<p><b>infamous</b> [ 'ɪnfəməs ] <i>adj.</i> 声名狼籍的 ☐ notorious</p>	<p>Nobody likes him because he is an <i>infamous</i> liar. 没有人喜欢他,因为他是个声名狼籍的骗子。</p>
<p><b>introduce</b> [ ɪntrə'dju:s ] <i>v.</i> 介绍 <i>n.</i> introduction <i>adj.</i> introductory</p>	<p>The chairman <i>introduced</i> the speaker to the audience. 主席将演讲人介绍给听众。</p>
<p><b>labor</b> [ 'leɪbə(r) ] <i>n.</i> 劳动 <i>adj.</i> laborious</p>	<p>The majority of men earn their living by manual <i>labor</i>. 大多数的人靠双手劳动来谋生。</p>

<b>lid</b> [lɪd] <i>n.</i> 盖  cover	Do not open the <b>lid</b> of the stove. 不要打开炉盖。
<b>majority</b> [mə'dʒɔrətɪ] <i>n.</i> 大多数	The <b>majority</b> of people prefer peace to war. 大多数的人喜爱和平,不喜欢战争。
<b>mercy</b> ['mɜ:si] <i>n.</i> 宽恕 <i>adj.</i> merciful	He showed <b>mercy</b> to his enemies and let them live. 他宽恕了敌人,让他们活着。
<b>moral</b> ['mɔrəl] <i>adj.</i> 道义上的 <i>n.</i> morality	The teacher felt a <b>moral</b> responsibility for the student's crime. 老师对那学生所犯的错,感到有道义上的责任。
<b>nod</b> [nɒd] <i>v.</i> 点头	The president <b>nodded</b> and everyone sat down around the table. 董事长点了头,每个人就都围着桌子坐下。
<b>operate</b> ['ɒpəreɪt] <i>v.</i> 转动 <i>n.</i> operation	The machine <b>operates</b> day and night. 机器日夜不停地转动。
<b>painful</b> ['peɪnfʊl] <i>adj.</i> 疼痛的	He had a <b>painful</b> cut on his thumb. 他大拇指上有伤口,很疼。

**Exercise 3.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. He tried to \_\_\_\_\_ a sewing machine.
2. Tobacco was \_\_\_\_\_ into Europe from America.
3. To win an election, a candidate must receive the \_\_\_\_\_ of the votes.

4. Land, \_\_\_\_\_ and capital are the three principal factors of production.
5. They showed little \_\_\_\_\_ to their enemies.

【解答】 1. operate      2. introduced      3. majority  
4. labor              5. mercy

《第四部分》

**pearl** [pɜ:l]      The natural *pearl* is much more expensive  
*n.* 珍珠              than a cultured one.  
天然珍珠比养殖的要昂贵得多。

**pitch** [pɪtʃ]      Every child likes to *pitch* stones into a lake.  
*v.* 1. 抛; 投              每个孩子都喜欢将石子抛入湖中。  
2. 搭; 扎              We *pitched* our tent under the tree.  
我们在树下扎营。

**precious**      Time is *precious*; do not waste it on worthless  
[ˈpreʃəs]              deeds.  
*adj.* 宝贵的              时间是宝贵的, 不要把它浪费在无价值的行动上。  
☐ valuable

**property**      The police found some stolen *property* hidden  
[ˈprɒpəti]              in the thief's house.  
*n.* 所有物; 财产              警察在小偷的屋里发现一些被藏起来的失窃物。  
☐ possessions

**rage** [reɪdʒ]      He flew into a *rage* when he found they had  
*n.* 愤怒                      gone without him.  
☐ angry, fury              当他发现他们已不辞而别时, 大为愤怒。

<b>relieve</b> [ri'li:v]	The medicine will soon <b>relieve</b> your headache.
v. 1. 减轻	那药很快就会减轻你的头疼。
n. relief	
2. 感到放心	We were <b>relieved</b> to hear that you had arrived safely. 听说你已安全抵达,我们都放心了。

<b>restless</b>	He couldn't sit still; he was very <b>restless</b> .
['restlɪs]	他无法静坐着;他很不安。
adj. 不安的	

<b>rug</b> [rʌg]	There were several small <b>rugs</b> in the living room.
n. 地毯	
 carpet	客厅里有几块小地毯。

<b>scout</b> [skaut]	The <b>scouts</b> went out during the night.
n. 侦察兵	侦察兵夜间出来。

<b>shame</b> [ʃeɪm]	She felt <b>shame</b> at having been so thoughtless.
n. 羞耻	她对她曾经如此的疏忽,感到羞耻。
 humiliation	
 boldness	

**Exercise 3.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

- In his \_\_\_\_\_ at being scolded, he broke the teacher's vase.
- The child blushed with \_\_\_\_\_ when he was caught stealing candy.
- She was presented a beautiful necklace of \_\_\_\_\_ on her birthday.
- The city is growing and \_\_\_\_\_ in the center is becoming more valuable.
- The sick child passed a \_\_\_\_\_ night.

【解答】 1. rage    2. shame    3. pearl    4. property  
5. restless

《第五部分》

**sketch**[sketʃ]  
n. 草案; 略图  
He gave me a *sketch* of his plans for the expedition.  
他给我一份他探险计划的草案。

**sound**[saund]  
adj. 健全的  
n. 声音  
He has a *sound* body; he is in healthy condition. 他有健康的身体; 他的健康情况良好。  
They heard the *sound* of the train whistle.  
他们听到火车的鸣笛声。

**spy**[spai]  
n. 侦探; 间谍  
v. 侦察  
The *spy* reported the development of a new weapon. 侦探报告新武器的进展情况。  
His job was to *spy* on the enemy.  
他的工作是侦察敌军。

**storage**  
[ˈstɔːrɪdʒ]  
n. 贮藏库  
A cold *storage* is used to keep eggs and meat from spoiling.  
冷藏库是用来防止蛋和肉腐坏的。

**summon**  
[ˈsʌmən]  
v. 传唤  
They were *summoned* to the bed-side of their dying father.  
他们被传唤到垂死的父亲的床边。

**tame**[teɪm]  
adj. 温驯的  
v. 驯服  
It is not difficult to ride a *tame* horse.  
骑一匹温驯的马并不难。  
He *tamed* the lions for the circus.  
他为马戏团驯服狮子。

**thrust**[θrʌst] | Jack *thrust* his hands into his pockets.  
*v.* 插入 | 杰克把两手插进衣袋里。

**trap**[træp] | The police set a *trap* to catch the escaped prisoner.  
*n.* 陷阱 | 警察设下陷阱以逮捕逃犯。  
 *snare*

**vaccinate** | He was *vaccinated* against several diseases at one time.  
 ['væksineɪt] | 他接种一次疫苗可抵抗好几种疾病。  
*v.* 接种疫苗

**wage**[weɪdʒ] | His *wage* is \$ 30 a week.  
*n.* 薪资 | 他的工资是一星期 30 美元。

**witness** | The boy *witnessed* the accident.  
 ['wɪtnɪs] | 那男孩子目睹了意外事故。  
*v.* 目睹  
*n.* 证人 | He made the remark in the presence of several *witnesses*.  
 他在几个证人面前说话。

**Exercise 3.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. They were asking for a \_\_\_\_\_ increase of \$ 5 a week.
2. She made a \_\_\_\_\_ of the landscape in pencil before painting it.
3. His furniture is in \_\_\_\_\_ while he finds a new house.
4. The birds are so \_\_\_\_\_ that they eat from our hands.
5. I was \_\_\_\_\_ against typhus last month.

**【解答】** 1. wage    2. sketch    3. storage    4. tame  
 5. vaccinated

## 效果检测

**Exercise 3.6** 找出一个与其他三个不相关的词:

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. (A) wet (B) curious (C) moist (D) damp  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 2. (A) sum (B) wage (C) salary (D) pay  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 3. (A) require (B) demand (C) claim (D) desire  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 4. (A) sketch (B) bulk (C) outline (D) plan  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 5. (A) dishonor (B) shame  
 (C) shade (D) humiliation  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 6. (A) firm (B) hard (C) solid (D) damp  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 7. (A) notorious (B) infamous  
 (C) horrible (D) disreputable  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 8. (A) rage (B) fury (C) anger (D) scorn  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 9. (A) common (B) unusual  
 (C) numerous (D) frequent  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 10. (A) evident (B) absolute  
 (C) clear (D) obvious

**【解答】** 1. B 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. C  
 6. D 7. C 8. D 9. C 10. B

**Exercise 3.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词:

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. 温驯的  
 (A) rude (B) generous (C) tame (D) fame  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 2. 点头  
 (A) vanish (B) spy (C) howl (D) nod  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 3. 愤怒  
 (A) wage (B) voyage (C) pitch (D) rage

- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. 犯;做  
 (A) commit (B) relieve (C) release (D) scorn
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. 淹死  
 (A) wage (B) drown (C) vaccinate (D) trap

**【解答】** 1. C 2. D 3. D 4. A 5. B

**Exercise 3.8** 找出一个与斜体词的意义相反的单词:

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. *evident*  
 (A) firm (B) ambiguous (C) excellent (D) plain
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. *demand*  
 (A) direct (B) command (C) request (D) grant
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. *encourage*  
 (A) disappoint (B) relieve  
 (C) affect (D) wither
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. *frequent*  
 (A) shallow (B) evident (C) rude (D) rare
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. *shame*  
 (A) charm (B) rug  
 (C) boldness (D) challenge

**【解答】** 1. B 2. D 3. A 4. D 5. C

**Exercise 3.9** 完整拼出下列句中所欠缺的单词:

1. He is the only w \_\_\_\_\_ s of the accident. (证人)
2. I saw him t \_\_\_\_\_ t the tent pole into the ground. (插入)
3. Aspirin will r \_\_\_\_\_ e your headache. (减轻)
4. Children usually like to read old f \_\_\_\_\_ es. (寓言)

5. Einstein was a mathematical and physical g \_\_\_\_\_ s. (天才)

【解答】 1. witness 2. thrust 3. relieve 4. fables  
5. genius

**Exercise 3.10** 找出一个与句中斜体词的意义最接近的单词:

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. We could see the *blaze* of a cheerful fire through the window.  
(A) pitch (B) rage (C) fury (D) flames
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. My parents will be *disappointed* if I failed the examination again.  
(A) despaired (B) disappeared  
(C) vanished (D) released
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. They put meat in the *trap* to attract the lion.  
(A) rug (B) rag (C) snare (D) freight
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The church bells *summon* people to worship.  
(A) call (B) commit (C) pray (D) attract
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. The dog seemed *restless* as if he sensed some danger.  
(A) shallow (B) uneasy (C) generous (D) painful
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Your friendship is most *precious* to me.  
(A) firm (B) evident (C) rude (D) valuable
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. We heard a wolf *howl* near the house.  
(A) disappear (B) yell (C) drown (D) thrust
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. He refused to join the army, believing that he had no *moral* right to kill.  
(A) ethical (B) normal (C) sound (D) bold
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. The car is my *property*; you can't use it without my permission.

(A) faculty

(B) possession

(C) resort

(D) responsibility

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. The doctor said that the patient's heart was *sound*.

(A) healthy (B) curious (C) candid (D) neutral

**【解答】** 1. D    2. A    3. C    4. A    5. B  
6. D    7. B    8. A    9. B    10. A

LESSON 4

预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. Just before sunset the *peasant* stopped working in the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) factory (B) field
2. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ now and *resume* working at 2 o'clock.  
 (A) stop (B) start
3. The little girl was *frightened* by the \_\_\_\_\_ dog.  
 (A) horrible (B) beautiful
4. He looked \_\_\_\_\_ as if he had seen a *ghost*.  
 (A) happy (B) pale
5. Your hair is so *tangled* that it looked as if \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) it has not been combed for a week  
 (B) it has been combed every day

◆ 解 答 ◆

1.B 2.A 3.A 4.B 5.A

《第一部分》

**accentuate** | The dark frame *accentuates* the brightness of  
 [æk'sentʃueɪt] | the picture.  
 v. 使更为明显 | 暗框使画的亮度更明显。

**aim**[eɪm] | He *aimed* at the lion, fired, and killed it.  
 v. 瞄准 | 他瞄准狮子, 开枪, 然后把它打死了。

<p><i>n.</i> 瞄准</p>	<p>The hunter took <i>aim</i> at the lion. 那猎人瞄准了狮子。</p>
<p><b>audience</b> [ 'ɔ: djəns ] <i>n.</i> 观众</p>	<p>The <i>audience</i> were very excited by the show. 观众因表演而非常兴奋。</p>
<p><b>bless</b> [ bles ] <i>v.</i> 祝福  damn, curse</p>	<p>They brought the children to church and the priest <i>blessed</i> them. 他们带着孩子去教堂, 牧师为他们祝福。</p>
<p><b>bundle</b> [ 'bʌndl ] <i>n.</i> 包; 包裹</p>	<p>We sent her a large <i>bundle</i> of presents on her birthday. 我们在她生日时送给她一大包礼物。</p>
<p><b>characteristic</b> [ ,kærəktə'ristɪk ] <i>n.</i> 特征 <i>v.</i> characterize</p>	<p>What are the <i>characteristics</i> that distinguish the Chinese from the Japanese? 区别中国人和日本人的特征是什么?</p>
<p><b>communicate</b> [ kə'mju:nɪkeɪt ] <i>v.</i> 1. 联络 2. 传达 <i>n.</i> communication</p>	<p>We can now <i>communicate</i> with people in Europe and America by telephone. 我们现在可以通过电话与在欧洲和美洲的人联系。 Radio, television and newspaper quickly <i>communicate</i> news to all parts of the world. 收音机、电视机和报纸能迅速地把消息传到全世界。</p>
<p><b>connect</b> [ kə'nekt ] <i>v.</i> 连接 <i>n.</i> connection</p>	<p>The two towns are <i>connected</i> by a railway. 这两个市镇由铁路连接。</p>

<p><b>correspond</b> [ˌkɒrɪsˈpɒnd]</p> <p>v. 1. 通信 2. 符合</p> <p>n. correspondence</p>	<p>Janet and Bob <i>corresponded</i> for many years before they met.</p> <p>珍妮特和鲍伯在见面前已通了好几年信。</p> <p>The house exactly <i>corresponds</i> with my needs.</p> <p>这栋房子正好符合我的需要。</p>
---	--

<p><b>darken</b>[ˈdɑːkən]</p> <p>v. 变黑</p> <p>adj. dark</p>	<p>The sky quickly <i>darkened</i> after sunset.</p> <p>日落后, 天空很快地变黑了。</p>
---	--

**Exercise 4.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The priest \_\_\_\_\_ the bread and wine in preparation for the ceremony.
2. His face was \_\_\_\_\_ with anger when he heard the bad news.
3. A popular television program may have a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of several million people.
4. A useful \_\_\_\_\_ of the cat is its ability to catch and kill mice.
5. His expenses do not \_\_\_\_\_ to his income.

<p><b>【解答】</b> 1. blessed      2. darkened      3. audience</p> <p>4. characteristic    5. correspond</p>
---

《第二部分》

<p><b>deny</b>[diˈnaɪ]</p> <p>v. 拒绝</p> <p>n. denial</p>	<p>Their employer <i>denied</i> them an increase of income.</p> <p>他们的老板拒绝给他们加薪。</p>
--	--

<p><b>discharge</b> [dis'tʃɑ:dʒ] v. 1. 排出 2. 解雇 ☐ dismiss</p>	<p>Factory chimneys <b>discharge</b> smoke into the atmosphere and make it dirty. 工厂的烟囱往空气里排烟,造成大气污染。 The servant was <b>discharged</b> for being dishonest. 这仆人因不诚实而被解雇。</p>
<p><b>dull</b>[dʌl] adj. 钝的 ☐ blunt ☒ sharp</p>	<p>The blade of this knife is so <b>dull</b> that it will not cut a radish. 这把刀的刀刃太钝,不能切萝卜。</p>
<p><b>endeavor</b> [in'devə(r)] n. 竭力 ☐ effort v. 努力</p>	<p>He made an <b>endeavor</b> to save the drowning girl. 他竭力去救那快要淹死的女孩。 The sick man did not <b>endeavor</b> to get better. 那病人没有努力使自己的病情好一点。</p>
<p><b>excellence</b> ['eksələns] n. 杰出 adj. excellent</p>	<p>His teacher praised him for the <b>excellence</b> of his report. 他的老师因他杰出的报告而称赞他。</p>
<p><b>fade</b>[feɪd] v. 枯萎 ☐ wither</p>	<p>The flowers in the garden <b>faded</b> at the end of summer. 花园里的花在夏末时枯萎。</p>
<p><b>fist</b>[fɪst] n. 拳头</p>	<p>He raised his <b>fist</b> and threatened to hit me. 他举起拳头威胁说要打我。</p>

<p><b>frighten</b>                  ['fraɪtən]                  v. 害怕                  n. fright</p>	<p>She was <i>frightened</i> to look down from the top of the tall building.                  她害怕从高楼的顶端往下看。</p>
--	---

<p><b>ghost</b>[gəʊst]                  n. 鬼魂                  ㊦ apparition</p>	<p>They claim that the <i>ghost</i> of the murdered man appears every night.                  他们声称那被杀者的鬼魂每晚都出现。</p>
---	---

<p><b>hardship</b>                  ['hɑ:dʃɪp]                  n. 艰难                  ㊦ comfort</p>	<p>Hunger, cold and sickness were among the <i>hardships</i> of pioneer life.                  饥饿、寒冷和疾病都是拓荒者艰难生活的一部分。</p>
--	---

**Exercise 4.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The old man's hearing has become \_\_\_\_\_, and you must speak loudly to him.
2. The Yellow River \_\_\_\_\_ its water into the Yellow Sea.
3. Everything is clear; how can we \_\_\_\_\_ the truth of his statement?
4. All memories of her childhood had \_\_\_\_\_ from her mind.
5. Thunder and lightning \_\_\_\_\_ most children and many adults.

**【解答】** 1. dull 2. discharges 3. deny 4. faded  
 5. frighten

《第三部分》

<p><b>huge</b>[hju:dʒ]                  adj. 极大的</p>	<p>Samson was a man of <i>huge</i> physical strength.                  参孙是个力量极大的人。</p>
--	--

<p><b>inferior</b> [in'fɪəriə(r)] <i>adj.</i> 较低的</p>	<p>His grades are <i>inferior</i> to mine this semester. 这学期他的分数比我的低。</p>
<p><b>invent</b>[in'vent] <i>v.</i> 发明 <i>n.</i> invention</p>	<p>Alexander Graham Bell <i>invented</i> the telephone in 1876. 亚历山大·格雷厄姆·贝尔于1876年发明了电话。</p>
<p><b>lighten</b> ['laɪtən] <i>v.</i> 照亮</p>	<p>A candle <i>lightened</i> the darkness of the great hall. 一支蜡烛照亮了黑暗的大厅。</p>
<p><b>male</b>[meɪl] <i>n.</i> 男性  female</p>	<p>Boys and men are <i>males</i>; girls and women are females. 男孩和男人是男性;女孩和女人是女性。</p>
<p><b>merit</b>['merɪt] <i>n.</i> 价值  worth</p>	<p>Each child will get a mark according to the <i>merit</i> of his work. 每个孩子都会依其工作的表现被评分。</p>
<p><b>mortal</b>['mɔ:təl] <i>adj.</i> 1. 致命的 2 人类的 <i>n.</i> mortality</p>	<p>He received a <i>mortal</i> wound soon after the battle began. 战争才开始不久,他就受了致命的伤。 It's beyond <i>mortal</i> power to bring a dead man back to life. 使死人复生是人力所不能及的。</p>
<p><b>opportunity</b> [ɒpə'tju:nəti] <i>n.</i> 机会</p>	<p>I am glad to have this <i>opportunity</i> of speaking to you. 我很高兴能有和你说话的机会。</p>

<p><b>palace</b> ['pælis] n. 宫殿</p>	<p>His home is a <i>palace</i> compared with our poor little house. 他家和我们贫穷的小房子比起来,可算是个宫殿了。</p>
---	---

<p><b>peasant</b> ['pezənt] n. 农夫; 农人 同 farmer</p>	<p>Many <i>peasants</i> were needed to help the farmer with the harvest. 这农夫需要许多农人来帮忙收割。</p>
--	--

**Exercise 4.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. They are building a new \_\_\_\_\_ for their king.
2. For most birds the \_\_\_\_\_ is bigger and more brightly colored than the female.
3. I have had no \_\_\_\_\_ to give him your message, because I have not seen him.
4. Edison didn't \_\_\_\_\_ many useful things for money.
5. Whales and elephants are \_\_\_\_\_ animals.

**【解答】** 1. palace 2. male 3. opportunity 4. invent  
5. huge

《第四部分》

<p><b>pity</b> ['pɪtɪ] n. 怜悯 adj. pitiful</p>	<p>I gave the beggar some money, feeling <i>pity</i> for him. 我可怜那乞丐,给了他一些钱。</p>
---	--

<p><b>preface</b> ['prefɪs] n. 序言</p>	<p>What did the writer say in the <i>preface</i> of the book? 作者在这本书的序言里说了些什么?</p>
---	--

<p><b>proportion</b> [prəʊ'pɔ:ʃən] n. 比例</p>	<p>The <b>proportion</b> of sunny days to rainy days last month was four to one. 上个月晴天和雨天的比例是4比1。</p>
<p><b>range</b>[reɪndʒ] n. 范围 ㊦ scope, extent</p>	<p>The power of nature is outside the <b>range</b> of human understanding. 大自然的力量超过人类所能理解的范围。</p>
<p><b>religious</b> [ri'lɪdʒəs] adj. 宗教的 n. religion</p>	<p><b>Religious</b> services are held here every Sunday. 每周日都在此举行宗教仪式。</p>
<p><b>resume</b> [ri'zju:m] v. 继续 n. resumption</p>	<p>We <b>resumed</b> our journey after a short rest. 休息片刻后我们继续旅行。</p>
<p><b>ruin</b>['ru(u):ɪn] n. 破坏 ㊦ destruction v. 破坏 ㊦ destroy, spoil</p>	<p>Proper care protects our property from <b>ruin</b>. 适当的照顾可以保护我们的资产免受损害。 She poured water all over my painting and <b>ruined</b> it. 她把水倒在我整个画上,把它弄坏了。</p>
<p><b>scrape</b>[skreɪp] v. 刮;削</p>	<p>The boy <b>scraped</b> the mud from his shoes. 那男孩刮掉鞋上的泥巴。</p>
<p><b>sharp</b>[ʃɑ:p] adj. 锋利的 adv. 整;准 ㊦ exactly</p>	<p>She cut the meat with a <b>sharp</b> knife. 她用锋利的刀切肉。 The meeting starts at two o'clock <b>sharp</b>; don't be late. 会议两点整开始;不要迟到。</p>

<p><b>skill</b>[skɪl] n. 熟练; 技能</p>	<p>The teacher managed her pupils with wonderful <i>skill</i>. 这位老师熟练地管理她的学生。</p>
---	---

**Exercise 4.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. Too much smoking and drinking will \_\_\_\_\_ your health.
2. Mix water and orange juice in the \_\_\_\_\_ of three to one.
3. After two weeks' vacation, he \_\_\_\_\_ his work.
4. The policeman felt \_\_\_\_\_ for the lost and crying child.
5. Everyone within the \_\_\_\_\_ of his voice heard the remark and laughed.

**【解答】** 1. ruin 2. proportion 3. resumed 4. pity  
5. range

《第五部分》

<p><b>sour</b>['sauə(r)] adj. 酸的</p>	<p>Some people don't like lemon juice; it tastes <i>sour</i>. 有些人不喜欢柠檬汁, 因为它是酸的。</p>
--	--

<p><b>square</b>[skweə(r)] n. 正方形</p>	<p>A <i>square</i> has four equal sides and four 90-degree angles. 正方形有 4 个等边和 4 个 90 度的角。</p>
---	--

<p><b>stout</b>[staut] adj. 肥胖的</p>	<p>He was too <i>stout</i> to fit into his old clothes. 他太胖, 以致穿不下旧衣服。</p>
<p><input type="checkbox"/> fat <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> slender</p>	

<b>superintendent</b> [ˌsju:pərɪn'tendənt] <i>n.</i> 监督者	He is the <b>superintendent</b> of this school. 他是这所学校的督学。
<b>tangle</b> ['tæŋɡl] <i>v.</i> 缠结 <input type="checkbox"/> entangle <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> disentangle	I don't like to sew with thread that <b>tangles</b> easily. 我不喜欢用容易打结的线缝东西。
<b>thumb</b> [θʌm] <i>n.</i> 拇指	He accidentally hit his <b>thumb</b> with the hammer. 他不小心用铁锤敲着了拇指。
<b>treaty</b> ['tri:tɪ] <i>n.</i> 条约 <input type="checkbox"/> agreement	The peace <b>treaty</b> was signed in Paris last summer. 和平条约于去年夏天在巴黎签订。
<b>vanish</b> ['væniʃ] <i>v.</i> 消失 <input type="checkbox"/> disappear	Their fear <b>vanished</b> when the storm ended. 当暴风雨结束时, 他们的忧虑也消失了。
<b>warfare</b> ['wɔ:fɛə(r)] <i>n.</i> 战争 <input type="checkbox"/> war	Civilians as well as soldiers take part in modern <b>warfare</b> . 现代战争中, 平民同士兵一样要参战。
<b>witty</b> ['wɪtɪ] <i>adj.</i> 机智的	A <b>witty</b> person makes <b>witty</b> remarks. 机智的人说话机智。

**Exercise 4.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The thief ran into the crowd and \_\_\_\_\_.
2. That trade \_\_\_\_\_ was signed by five countries.
3. Most green grapes or apples taste \_\_\_\_\_.

4. Your glove has a hole in the \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ of our school is responsible for our education.

【解答】 1. vanished 2. treaty 3. sour 4. thumb  
5. superintendent

### 效果检测

**Exercise 4.6** 找出一个与斜体词的意义最接近的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. a *bunch* of flowers  
(A) field (B) sum (C) bundle (D) file
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. major *characteristics* of the animal  
(A) features (B) realms  
(C) knots (D) testimonies
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. to *deny* one's offer  
(A) preach (B) reject (C) curse (D) accept
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. a *dull* color  
(A) keen (B) ghastly (C) horrible (D) dim
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. to make every *endeavor*  
(A) effort (B) evidence (C) incident (D) skill
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. the *faded* flowers  
(A) rubbed (B) vanished  
(C) uttered (D) withered
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. a limited *range* of ideas  
(A) charm (B) scope (C) snare (D) aim
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. to *devise* a machine  
(A) bend (B) hire (C) invent (D) repair
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. a certificate of *merit*

- (A) worth (B) ceremony  
(C) summit (D) commerce

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. a peace *treaty*

- (A) testimony (B) agreement  
(C) trade (D) peasant

**【解答】** 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. A  
6. D 7. B 8. C 9. A 10. B

**Exercise 4.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词：

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. 排出

- (A) deny (B) frighten  
(C) vanish (D) discharge

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. 拳头

- (A) bunch (B) fist (C) thumb (D) finger

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. 致命的

- (A) keen (B) sharp (C) mortal (D) huge

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. 破坏

- (A) ruin (B) despair (C) cemetery (D) curse

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. 督学

- (A) excellence (B) superintendent  
(C) faculty (D) palace

**【解答】** 1. D 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. B

**Exercise 4.8** 找出一个与斜体词的意义相反的单词：

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. *sharp*

- (A) huge (B) shallow (C) blunt (D) lazy

- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. *slender*  
 (A) stout (B) dull (C) tame (D) flimsy
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. *vanish*  
 (A) draw (B) appear (C) wither (D) deny
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. *bless*  
 (A) confuse (B) stoop (C) sprinkle (D) damn
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. *comfort*  
 (A) peak (B) trap (C) suffering (D) mercy

【解答】 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. C

**Exercise 4.9** 完整拼出下列句中所欠缺的单词：

1. There was a large a \_\_\_\_\_ e at the theater. (观众)
2. Would you like to c \_\_\_\_\_ d with an English boy? (通信)
3. His e \_\_\_\_\_ r to persuade her to go with him failed. (努力)
4. When he returns, he will r \_\_\_\_\_ e his previous job. (继续)
5. You'd better use a ruler to draw a s \_\_\_\_\_ e. (正方形)

【解答】 1. audience 2. correspond 3. endeavor  
 4. resume 5. square

**Exercise 4.10** 找出一个与句中斜体词的意义最接近的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. She became *stout* as she grew older.  
 (A) tall (B) fat (C) stiff (D) rude
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. We *scraped* the old paint from the furniture.  
 (A) rubbed (B) resumed  
 (C) rejected (D) released
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. He won a *huge* sum of money in the horse-race game.

- (A) generous (B) enormous  
(C) grand (D) splendid

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. Her white dress *accentuated* the redness of her sunburned arms.

- (A) lightened (B) affirmed  
(C) encouraged (D) emphasized

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. Most foods are not good to eat when they have gone *sour*.

- (A) sore (B) rotten (C) bitter (D) acid

**【解答】** 1. B 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. D

**Exercise 4.11** 将题前的斜体词转换为适当的词性,填入空格内:

1. *invent* Necessity is the mother of \_\_\_\_\_.
2. *deny* The minister asked the newspaper to print a \_\_\_\_\_ of the true story.
3. *correspond* The library bought all the \_\_\_\_\_ between Queen Victoria and her daughters.
4. *communicate* Radio and television are important means of \_\_\_\_\_.
5. *mortal* If this disease spreads in the country, the doctors fear that there'll be a high \_\_\_\_\_.

**【解答】** 1. invention 2. denial 3. correspondence  
4. communication 5. mortality

LESSON 5

预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. The *blind* man \_\_\_\_\_ things clearly.  
 (A) cannot see (B) can see
2. There are some *deposits* at the \_\_\_\_\_ of the bottle.  
 (A) top (B) bottom
3. The President is *burdened* with \_\_\_\_\_ for decisions which may affect the whole country.  
 (A) responsibility (B) happiness
4. His mother \_\_\_\_\_ a box and *disclosed* what was in it.  
 (A) opened (B) hid
5. He has a *humble* job with very \_\_\_\_\_ wages.  
 (A) high (B) low

◆ 解 答 ◆  
 1.A 2.B 3.A 4.A 5.B

《第一部分》

<p><b>accept</b>[ək'sept]                  v. 接受                  同 receive</p>	<p>She asked me to go to the party and I <b>accepted</b> her invitation.                  她请我去赴宴,而我也接受了她的邀请。</p>
---	--

<p><b>alarm</b>[ə'lɑ:m]                  n. 恐惧                  同 fear</p>	<p>Small earthquakes are so common here that people don't feel much <b>alarm</b> at them.                  这里经常发生小地震,因此人们对它们并不感到很害怕。</p>
--	--

**author** [ˈɔːθə(r)] | Do you know who the **author** of this novel is?  
*n.* 作者 | 你知道这本小说的作者是谁吗?

**blind** [blaɪnd] | The deaf and the **blind** deserve sympathy and help.  
*adj.* 瞎的 | 聋子和瞎子应该得到同情和帮助。

**burden** [ˈbɜːdən] | The mule was **burdened** with heavy loads.  
*v.* 使负重担 | 那骡子负着重担。  
*n.* 负担 | She had too heavy a **burden** and became sick.  
 她负担太重, 因而病倒了。

**charitable** | He was a **charitable** man who used his wealth  
 [ˈtʃærətəbl] | for the poor and sick man.  
*adj.* 慈善的 | 他是个善良的人, 用他的财富去帮助穷人和病人。  
*n.* charity

**companion** | John traveled around the world with me as my  
 [kəmˈpænjən] | **companion**.  
*n.* 同伴 | 约翰和我结伴一起环游世界。  
 colleague

**conquer** | Scientists are seeking ways to **conquer** cancer.  
 [ˈkɒŋkə(r)] | 科学家正在寻找方法以攻克癌症。  
*v.* 克服, 占领

**costume** | The professor was in academic **costume** when I  
 [ˈkɒstju:m] | saw him yesterday.  
*n.* 服装 | 我昨天看到教授时, 他正穿着大学服。  
 dress

<p><b>dash</b>[dæʃ]</p> <p>v. 投掷</p> <p>☐ throw, hurl</p>	<p>In a moment of anger he <b>dashed</b> the glass against the door.</p> <p>他一时气愤,将杯子摔到门上。</p>
---	--

**Exercise 5.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The Romans \_\_\_\_\_ much of the ancient world.
2. The guides at the museum were dressed in Chinese \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The design of the new car was not \_\_\_\_\_ by the public.
4. Tom helped the \_\_\_\_\_ man across the road.
5. A person who lives or travels with you as a friend and helper is your \_\_\_\_\_.

**【解答】** 1. conquered      2. costumes      3. accepted  
 4. blind                      5. companion

《第二部分》

<p><b>deposit</b></p> <p>[dɪ'pɒzɪt]</p> <p>n. 沉淀物</p> <p>v. 储存</p>	<p>There is often a <b>deposit</b> of sand and mud at the mouth of a river.</p> <p>河口常有泥沙的沉淀。</p> <p>He <b>deposited</b> quite a lot of money in the bank.</p> <p>他把相当多的钱存在银行里。</p>
<p><b>disclose</b></p> <p>[dɪs'kləʊz]</p> <p>v. 露出</p> <p>☐ reveal</p> <p>n. disclosure</p>	<p>The lifting of the curtain <b>disclosed</b> a beautiful painting.</p> <p>帘幕启开后,露出一幅美丽的图画。</p>

<p><b>dumb</b>[dʌm]  <i>adj.</i> 沉默的   <i>mute</i></p>	<p>The class remained <b>dumb</b> when the teacher asked a difficult question.          当老师问了一道难题时,全班哑口无言。</p>
<p><b>endure</b>[ɪn'djʊə(r)]  <i>v.</i> 忍受  <i>n.</i> endurance</p>	<p>Be quiet! I can't <b>endure</b> that noise any longer.          安静!我再也忍受不了那嘈杂声了。</p>
<p><b>exception</b>          [ɪk'sepʃən]  <i>n.</i> 例外  <i>adj.</i> exceptional</p>	<p>You all must take the examination; I can make no <b>exception</b>.          你们必须全体参加考试,我不允许有例外。</p>
<p><b>extreme</b>          [ɪks'tri:m]  <i>adj.</i> 极度的  <i>n.</i> extremity</p>	<p>The <b>extreme</b> penalty of the law is punishment by death.          法律上的极刑是死刑。</p>
<p><b>flame</b>[fleɪm]  <i>n.</i> 火焰</p>	<p>The whole village was in <b>flames</b> when we got there.          当我们到那里时,整个村子都陷入了火海。</p>
<p><b>glance</b>[glɑ:ns]  <i>n.</i> 匆匆一瞥  <i>v.</i> 瞥视</p>	<p>He looked over the newspapers with a hasty <b>glance</b>. 他匆匆地看过报纸。          I <b>glanced</b> out of the window to see if the rain had stopped.          我向窗外瞥了一眼,看雨是否已经停了。</p>
<p><b>hardware</b>          ['hɑ:dweə(r)]  <i>n.</i> 五金工具</p>	<p>He bought a hammer and other <b>hardware</b> at the store.          他在那家店里买了一把铁锤和其他的五金工具。</p>

<p><b>humble</b> ['hʌmbəl]  <i>adj.</i> 1. 卑微的          2. 简陋的</p>	<p>The vastness of the universe makes a person feel <b>humble</b>. 宇宙的浩瀚使人觉得自身渺小。          Lincoln was born in a <b>humble</b> log cabin.          林肯出生在一个简陋的小木屋里。</p>
--	--

**Exercise 5.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. You must answer all the questions without \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Hellen Keller learned to speak; she was blind and deaf but not \_\_\_\_\_.
3. There are rich \_\_\_\_\_ of gold in those hills.
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the burning candle was yellow.
5. Locks, nails, screws, knives and tools are \_\_\_\_\_.

**【解答】** 1. exception 2. dumb 3. deposits 4. flame  
 5. hardware

《第三部分》

<p><b>influence</b>          ['ɪnfluəns]  <i>n.</i> 感化力;影响  <i>adj.</i> influential  <i>v.</i> 影响          同 affect</p>	<p>His <b>influence</b> made me a better man.          他的感化力使我成为一个更好的人。          Don't let me <b>influence</b> your decision.          不要让我影响你的决定。</p>
<p><b>investigate</b>          [ɪn'vestɪgeɪt]  <i>v.</i> 调查  <i>n.</i> investigation</p>	<p>The police <b>investigated</b> the cause of a railway accident.          警察调查火车事故的原因。</p>

<p><b>lack</b>[læk] n. 缺乏  shortage, want</p>	<p>The plants died for <b>lack</b> of water. 植物死于缺水。</p>
<p><b>lightning</b> ['laɪtnɪŋ] n. 闪电</p>	<p><b>Lightning</b> is usually followed by thunder. 在闪电之后通常有雷声。</p>
<p><b>mammal</b> ['mæməl] n. 哺乳动物</p>	<p>A whale is not a fish, but a <b>mammal</b>. 鲸不是鱼, 而是哺乳动物。</p>
<p><b>motion</b> ['məʊʃən] n. 动作  movement</p>	<p>Avoid unnecessary <b>motion</b> of your hand while you are writing. 当你写字时, 避免不必要的手部动作。</p>
<p><b>normal</b>['nɔ:məl] adj. 正常的  regular  abnormal</p>	<p>The <b>normal</b> temperature of the human body is about 36.5 degrees Centigrade. 人体正常的温度是 36.5 摄氏度左右。</p>
<p><b>oppose</b>[ə'pəʊz] v. 反对  resist  agree</p>	<p>I am very much <b>opposed</b> to your going abroad. 我极力反对你出国。</p>
<p><b>palm</b>[pɑ:m] n. 手掌</p>	<p>She put a coin in the <b>palm</b> of the beggar's hand. 她将一枚硬币放在乞丐的手中。</p>
<p><b>peck</b>[pek] v. 啄</p>	<p>The bird <b>pecked</b> a hole in the tree. 那只鸟在树上啄了个洞。</p>

**Exercise 5.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ feeds its young with milk from the breast.
2. Detectives \_\_\_\_\_ crimes to find out who did them.
3. In the backyard I saw many hens \_\_\_\_\_ at the corn.
4. If a thing is in \_\_\_\_\_, it is not at rest.
5. Many people \_\_\_\_\_ building a new highway because of cost.

**【解答】** 1. mammal      2. investigate      3. pecking  
4. motion              5. oppose(d)

《第四部分》

<p><b>planet</b>['plænit] n. 行星</p>	<p>The earth is one of the <b>planets</b> that move around the sun. 地球是绕太阳运转的行星之一。</p>
---	--

<p><b>preparation</b> [ˌprepə'reɪʃən] n. 准备 v. prepare</p>	<p>We are getting things together in <b>preparation</b> for the trip. 我们收拾东西为旅行做准备。</p>
--	---

<p><b>proposal</b> [prə'pəʊzəl] n. 建议 v. propose</p>	<p>He has made a <b>proposal</b> that she should take a rest for a while. 他建议她应该休息一会儿。</p>
--	--

<p><b>rapid</b>['ræpɪd] adj. 迅速的 同 fast, swift</p>	<p>The <b>rapid</b> development of Singapore surprised all other countries. 新加坡的迅速发展,使所有其他的国家感到惊讶。</p>
--	--

<b>remarkable</b> [rɪ'mɑ:kəbl] <i>adj.</i> 出众的	She is <i>remarkable</i> for her sweet temper. 她因温和的性情而出众。
<b>retain</b> [rɪ'teɪn] <i>v.</i> 保留	She <i>retains</i> a clear memory of her schooldays. 她仍清楚地记得她的学生时代。
<b>rust</b> [rʌst] <i>n.</i> 锈	The unpainted metal tools were covered with <i>rust</i> . 未上漆的金属工具布满了锈。
<b>scratch</b> [skrætʃ] <i>v.</i> 划; 抓 <i>n.</i> 抓痕	The man <i>scratched</i> a match on the wall. 那人在墙上划亮了一根火柴。 He has a deep <i>scratch</i> on his face. 他脸上有道深深的抓痕。
<b>shave</b> [ʃeɪv] <i>v.</i> 刮胡子	Do you <i>shave</i> yourself or go to the barber's? 你是自己刮胡子, 还是去理发厅?
<b>slant</b> [slɑ:nt] <i>n.</i> 斜面  slope	The <i>slant</i> of the roof is too steep to climb. 屋顶的斜面太陡, 无法攀爬。

**Exercise 5.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. Man's landing on the moon is the most \_\_\_\_\_ event in all human history.
2. The champion has \_\_\_\_\_ his championship title longer than anyone else.
3. Plans for selling the new products are now in \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ on your hand will soon be well.
5. Please rub the \_\_\_\_\_ off the old helmet.

- 【解答】 1. remarkable    2. retained    3. preparation  
4. scratch    5. rust

《第五部分》

**sow** [səʊ]    The farmer *sowed* the field with wheat.  
v. 种植    那农民把小麦种在田里。

**squirrel**    The *squirrels* were very busy gathering nuts  
[ˈskwɪrəl]    for the winter.  
n. 松鼠    松鼠正忙着为冬天采集胡桃。

**strain** [streɪn]    He *strained* every muscle to lift the heavy  
v. 竭力    rock. 他竭尽全力来举起那块大石头。

**supreme**    He showed *supreme* courage in his decision.  
[sjuˈpri:m]    他的决定表现出了最大的勇气。  
adj. 最大的

**tap** [tæp]    He *tapped* me on the shoulder.  
v. 轻拍    他轻拍我的肩膀。  
n. 龙头    Hot water flowed from the *tap*.  
热水从龙头中流出。

**thunder**    We had a lot of *thunder* this summer.  
[ˈθʌndə(r)]    今年夏天经常打雷。  
n. 打雷

**tremble**    She *trembled* when she heard the bad news.  
[ˈtreɪbl]    她听到坏消息时, 颤抖了起来。  
v. 颤抖



- \_\_\_\_\_ (C) woe (D) distress
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. (A) shake (B) scratch  
(C) rub (D) scrape
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. (A) rapid (B) slender  
(C) swift (D) quick
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. (A) subjugate (B) conquer  
(C) vanish (D) vanquish
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. (A) reject (B) object  
(C) oppose (D) defeat
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. (A) endure (B) endeavor  
(C) stand (D) bear
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. (A) keep (B) hold  
(C) retain (D) resume
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. (A) close (B) show  
(C) reveal (D) disclose

**【解答】** 1. B    2. D    3. B    4. A    5. B  
6. C    7. D    8. B    9. D    10. A

**Exercise 5.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. 沉默的  
(A) dull (B) dumb (C) dim (D) damp
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. 火焰  
(A) flame (B) fame (C) shame (D) tame
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. 哺乳动物  
(A) plant (B) squirrel (C) fable (D) mammal
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. 轻拍  
(A) nod (B) tap (C) tangle (D) rub
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. 蒸汽

(A) rust (B) fist (C) vapor (D) feature

【解答】 1. B 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. C

**Exercise 5.8** 找出一个与斜体词的意义相反的单词:\_\_\_\_\_ 1. *cruel*(A) dull (B) religious  
(C) benevolent (D) restless\_\_\_\_\_ 2. *conceal*(A) discharge (B) disclose  
(C) reject (D) vanish\_\_\_\_\_ 3. *humble*

(A) proud (B) cheap (C) huge (D) firm

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. *burden*

(A) scrape (B) unload (C) tangle (D) connect

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. *sow*

(A) harvest (B) plant (C) bless (D) strain

【解答】 1. C 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. A

**Exercise 5.9** 完整拼出下列句中所欠缺的单词:

1. Please don't leave the t \_\_\_\_\_ p running. (龙头)
2. Two persons were killed by the l \_\_\_\_\_ g last night. (闪电)
3. The w \_\_\_\_\_ rs agreed to defend their castle to the last man. (战士)
4. The stars' i \_\_\_\_\_ e on men has not been proved. (影响)
5. Before writing your check, you must d \_\_\_\_\_ t some of your money in the bank. (储蓄)

【解答】 1. tap 2. lightning 3. warrior 4. influence  
5. deposit

**Exercise 5.10** 找出一个与句中斜体词的意义最接近的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Grandfathers are usually *charitable* toward the mistakes of their grandchildren.  
(A) cruel (B) benevolent  
(C) enormous (D) ambitious
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. She was gathering flowers with her *companions* in the valley.  
(A) challenges (B) warriors  
(C) trades (D) colleagues
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. If you go to Scotland, you may see people in Highland *costume*.  
(A) dress (B) parcel (C) custom (D) charm
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The waves *dashed* the boat against the rocks.  
(A) pulled (B) rejected  
(C) hurled (D) resumed
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. If help does not come, we must *endure* to the end.  
(A) bear (B) endeavor (C) retain (D) strain
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. I could recognize the old car at a *glance*.  
(A) square (B) feature (C) flame (D) glimpse
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. What *influenced* you to do it?  
(A) affirmed (B) affected  
(C) invited (D) interested
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. They soon began to *investigate* the cause of the fire.  
(A) affirm (B) invent  
(C) examine (D) deny

- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. The farmers worried about the *lack* of rain.  
(A) shortage (B) drift  
(C) woe (D) burden
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Japan made a *proposal* to Korea for increasing trade between two countries.  
(A) preparation (B) exception  
(C) suggestion (D) companion

**【解答】** 1. B    2. D    3. A    4. C    5. A  
6. D    7. B    8. C    9. A    10. C

LESSON 6

预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. We can see the \_\_\_\_\_ star at *dusk*.  
 (A) evening (B) morning
2. He has some *rare* stamps which are \_\_\_\_\_ available.  
 (A) easily (B) scarcely
3. She left her children at home with a *pang* of \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) happiness (B) sadness
4. A *cottage* is a small house used by people during holidays in the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) country (B) city
5. He was *faint* with \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) praise and encouragement (B) hunger and cold

◆ 解 答 ◆

1.A 2.B 3.B 4.A 5.B

《第一部分》

<p><b>accidental</b>                  [ˌæksɪ'dentəl]  <i>adj.</i> 偶然的                  同 unexpected</p>	<p>We became friends after our <b>accidental</b> meeting at the Christmas party.                  在圣诞宴会偶然的相遇后,我们成为了朋友。</p>
---	--

<p><b>ambition</b> [æm'biʃən] n. 雄心 adj. ambitious</p>	<p>One of his <i>ambitions</i> is to become a famous politician. 成为一个有名的政治家是他的雄心之一。</p>
<p><b>authority</b> [ɔ:'θɔ:ɹəti] n. 权力 v. authorize</p>	<p>A policeman has the <i>authority</i> to arrest speeding drivers. 警察有权拘捕超速驾驶的司机。</p>
<p><b>blossom</b> ['blɒsəm] v. 开花 n. 开花的状态或时期  bloom, flower</p>	<p>All the orchards <i>blossom</i> in spring. 所有的果树在春天开花。 The cherry trees are in full <i>blossom</i> now. 樱花正在盛开。</p>
<p><b>bureau</b>[ 'bjʊərəʊ] n. 局  office</p>	<p>An information <i>bureau</i> collects and keeps various facts. 新闻局收集和保存多方面的事实。</p>
<p><b>charm</b>[ tʃɑ:m] n. 迷人; 魅力  attraction  ugliness</p>	<p>His essays have a <i>charm</i> of style that can't be found in other writers. 他的文章有一种迷人的风格, 这在其他作家中是找不到的。</p>
<p><b>comparison</b> n. 比较 [kəm'pærɪsən] v. compare adj. comparative</p>	<p>The building in Dalian are small in <i>comparison</i> with the skyscrapers in New York. 大连的建筑物和纽约的摩天大楼相比, 算是小的。</p>

<p><b>conscience</b> [ˈkɒnʃəns] n. 是非之心; 良心 adj. conscientious</p>	<p>Jean's got no <b>conscience</b>; she'd steal anything from anybody. 琼没有是非之心,她会从任何人身上偷走任何东西。</p>
<p><b>cottage</b> [ˈkɒtɪdʒ] n. 小屋 同 cabin</p>	<p>He lives in a <b>cottage</b> in the woods. 他住在森林中的小屋里。</p>
<p><b>dawn</b> [dɔ:n] n. 黎明 同 daybreak 同 dusk</p>	<p>We started our trip at <b>dawn</b> in order to get there before noon. 为了在中午前到达那里,我们黎明即动身上路。</p>

**Exercise 6.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

- If you have a guilty \_\_\_\_\_, you feel or know you have done wrong.
- They worked hard from \_\_\_\_\_ till dusk.
- It was \_\_\_\_\_ that we arrived at the party at the same time.
- Because he was filled with \_\_\_\_\_, he worked after school and on Saturday.
- The teacher's \_\_\_\_\_ of the heart to a pump helped the students understand its action.

**【解答】** 1. conscience    2. dawn    3. accidental  
4. ambition    5. comparison

## 《第二部分》

<p><b>depress</b> [dɪ'pres] v. 1. 使沮丧 2. 使萧条 ☒ boost</p>	<p>The rainy season always <i>depresses</i> me. 雨季总使我沮丧。 When business is <i>depressed</i>, many men lose their positions. 商业萧条时, 许多人失业。</p>
<p><b>discourage</b> [dɪs'kʌrɪdʒ] v. 1. 劝阻 2. 使气馁 ☒ depress</p>	<p>We tried to <i>discourage</i> him from climbing the mountain without a guide. 我们设法劝他不要没有向导就去爬山。 Try again! Don't let one failure <i>discourage</i> you. 再试试! 不要因一次失败就气馁。</p>
<p><b>dusk</b> [dʌsk] n. 傍晚 ☒ twilight</p>	<p>The buildings over there are scarcely visible in the <i>dusk</i>. 傍晚时, 那里的建筑物几乎看不见。</p>
<p><b>exchange</b> [ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ] n. 交换 ☒ interchange</p>	<p><i>Exchange</i> of prisoners during a war is not very common. 战争中交换战俘的情况并不常见。</p>
<p><b>extraordinary</b> [ɪks'trɔːdnəri] adj. 惊人的</p>	<p>Eight feet is an <i>extraordinary</i> height for a man. 一个人身高八英尺是惊人的。</p>
<p><b>faint</b> [feɪnt] adj. 微弱的</p>	<p>She called for help in a <i>faint</i> voice. 她以微弱的声音求助。</p>

<p><b>flash</b>[flæʃ] v. 闪光 同 sparkle</p>	<p>The lightning <i>flashed</i> across the sky. 闪电划过天空。</p>
<p><b>frost</b>[frɒst] n. 霜 adj. frosty</p>	<p><i>Frost</i> has killed several of our young plants. 霜已毁坏了我们好几株幼苗。</p>
<p><b>gleam</b>[gli:m] n. 微弱的光 同 flash, beam</p>	<p>A <i>gleam</i> of light shone through the partly open door. 微弱的光线从半开的门里射出来。</p>
<p><b>harness</b>[ˈhɑ:nɪs] n. 马具 v. 利用</p>	<p>The saddle is a part of a horse's <i>harness</i>. 马鞍是马具的一部分。 We can <i>harness</i> water in a river to produce electric power. 我们可以利用河中的水产生电力。</p>

**Exercise 6.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

- The scientist is a man of \_\_\_\_\_ genius.
- The young buds on the tree have been damaged by the late \_\_\_\_\_.
- There have been numerous \_\_\_\_\_ of views between the two countries.
- The wet weather \_\_\_\_\_ people from going to the sports meeting.
- I was \_\_\_\_\_ after reading the newspaper that was filled with news of accidents.

**【解答】** 1. extraordinary      2. frost      3. exchanges  
4. discouraged      5. depressed

## 《第三部分》

<p><b>hymn</b>[him]</p> <p><i>n.</i> 圣歌</p> <p><i>v.</i> 唱赞美歌</p>	<p>The people joined together in singing a <b>hymn</b>.</p> <p>人们在一起唱圣歌。</p> <p>They <b>hymned</b> their thanks to God.</p> <p>他们向上帝唱赞美歌以表达感谢。</p>
<p><b>inform</b>[in'fɔ:m]</p> <p><i>v.</i> 告知</p>	<p>Can you <b>inform</b> me where he lives right now?</p> <p>你能告诉我他现在住在哪里吗?</p>
<p><b>invite</b>[in'vaɪt]</p> <p><i>v.</i> 邀请</p> <p><i>n.</i> invitation</p>	<p>She <b>invited</b> her friends to her birthday party.</p> <p>她邀请朋友参加她的生日宴会。</p>
<p><b>ladder</b>['lædə(r)]</p> <p><i>n.</i> 梯子</p>	<p>The boy climbed the <b>ladder</b> to get into their tree house.</p> <p>男孩子爬梯子以便进入他们的树上小屋。</p>
<p><b>limb</b>[lɪm]</p> <p><i>n.</i> 肢;手足</p>	<p>That man with one arm lost his other <b>limb</b> in an airplane crash.</p> <p>那独臂男人是在一次坠机中失去一条手臂的。</p>
<p><b>manage</b></p> <p>[ 'mænɪdʒ ]</p> <p><i>v.</i> 1. 驾驶</p> <p> handle</p> <p>2. 处理</p> <p> conduct</p>	<p>He couldn't <b>manage</b> his horse, and it threw him to the ground.</p> <p>他驾驭不住马,于是被摔到地上。</p> <p>They hired a young man to <b>manage</b> their business. 他们雇佣了一个青年来处理他们的业务。</p>
<p><b>method</b>['meθəd]</p> <p><i>n.</i> 方法</p>	<p>Jonas Salk found a new <b>method</b> of teaching music. 乔纳斯·索尔克找到一个教音乐的新方法。</p>

**motive** ['məʊtɪv] | We despise those who act from low or selfish  
*n.* 动机 *motive*.  
 同 cause 我们看不起那些行为出于下流或自私动机的人。

**nostril** ['nɒstrɪl] | The Indian princess wore a diamond in her  
*n.* 鼻孔 *nostril*.  
 印第安公主在右鼻孔中戴了一颗钻石。

**oral** ['ɔ:rəl] | She gives us an *oral* report instead of a written  
*adj.* 口头的 report.  
 她以口头代替书面向我们报告。

**Exercise 6.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. We were \_\_\_\_\_ that the prisoner had escaped.
2. We \_\_\_\_\_ all our relatives to my grandfather's sixtieth birthday party.
3. She knows how to \_\_\_\_\_ her husband when he is angry.
4. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ agreement is not enough; we must have a written promise.
5. A rope \_\_\_\_\_ was hung over the ship's side.

【解答】 1. informed 2. invited 3. manage 4. oral  
 5. ladder

《第四部分》

**pang** [pæŋ] | It is hard to stand the *pangs* of a toothache.  
*n.* 突然的剧痛 一阵阵的牙疼很难忍受。

<p><b>peculiar</b> [pɪ'kju:ljə(r)] <i>adj.</i> 独特的 <i>n.</i> peculiarity</p>	<p>All cultures seem to have <b>peculiar</b> customs. 所有的文化似乎都有独特的风俗。</p>
<p><b>plate</b> [pleɪt] <i>n.</i> 盘  dish</p>	<p>In America food is usually served on <b>plates</b>. 在美国,食物通常装在盘子里。</p>
<p><b>preserve</b> [prɪ'zɜ:v] <i>v.</i> 保留 <i>n.</i> preservation</p>	<p>The city decided to <b>preserve</b> the beautiful old building as a museum. 该市决定保留那栋漂亮的旧建筑物作为博物馆。</p>
<p><b>prospect</b> ['prɒspekt] <i>n.</i> 景色  view, scene 2. 希望  expectation, hope</p>	<p>From the top of the hill there is a beautiful <b>prospect</b> over the hill. 从山顶可以看到这座山美丽的全景。</p> <p>I see no <b>prospect</b> of his recovery from the disease. 我看他没有希望从疾病中康复。</p>
<p><b>rare</b> [rɛə(r)] <i>adj.</i> 1. 稀有的 2. (指肉)半熟的</p>	<p>Today pandas are <b>rare</b> animals in the world. 如今,熊猫是稀有动物。</p> <p>I want my steak very <b>rare</b>, please. 请把牛排煮得生一点。</p>
<p><b>remedy</b> ['remɪdɪ] <i>n.</i> 药物  cure</p>	<p>This pill is a good <b>remedy</b> for headache and toothache. 这药丸是治疗头痛和牙痛的良药。</p>

**retire**[ri'taɪə(r)] | My father *retired* from his job at the age of 60.  
*v.* 退休 | 我父亲 60 岁时退休。

**scream**[skri:m] | A *scream* for help came from inside the building.  
*n.* 尖叫声 | 从那栋建筑物内传出一声尖厉的呼救声。

**shed**[ʃed] | The garden tools are in that *shed*.  
*n.* 小屋; 棚 | 园艺用具放在那间小屋内。  
*v.* 流出 | We *shed* our blood for our country.  
 回 pour | 我们为 国流血捐躯。

**Exercise 6.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. That way of speaking is \_\_\_\_\_ to people in this part of the country.
2. They built a new school as a \_\_\_\_\_ for crowded classroom.
3. Ancient Egyptians knew how to \_\_\_\_\_ dead bodies from decay.
4. She helped her mother wash the \_\_\_\_\_ in the kitchen.
5. Seeing no \_\_\_\_\_ of success, we quit the attempt to climb the mountain.

**【解答】** 1. peculiar      2. remedy      3. preserve  
 4. plates              5. prospect

## 《第五部分》

<b>slavery</b> ['sleɪvəri] <i>n.</i> 奴隶制度 <i>cf.</i> slave	Many men fought for the abolition of <b>slavery</b> . 许多人为废除奴隶制度而奋斗。
<b>spacious</b> ['speɪʃəs] <i>adj.</i> 宽敞的	The rooms of the palace were <b>spacious</b> . 这座大厦的房间很宽敞。
<b>staff</b> [stɑ:f] <i>n.</i> 全体人员	The teaching <b>staff</b> of the school is excellent. 该校的教师很优秀。
<b>straw</b> [strɔ:] <i>n.</i> 稻草	The farmers covered the barn floor with <b>straw</b> . 农民们把稻草覆盖在谷仓的地板上。
<b>surface</b> ['sɜ:fɪs] <i>n.</i> 表面  bottom	Leaves were floating on the <b>surface</b> of the pond. 叶子漂浮在池塘的水面上。
<b>tick</b> [tɪk] <i>n.</i> 滴答声	The silence were broken only by the <b>tick</b> of the clock. 只有钟的滴答声打破了寂静。
<b>tremendous</b> [tri'mendəs] <i>adj.</i> 巨大的	The army suffered a <b>tremendous</b> defeat in that battle. 在那次战役中, 陆军惨败。
<b>variety</b> [və'raɪəti] <i>n.</i> 多样性	The store over there has a great <b>variety</b> of toys. 那边那家商店里有很多各式各样的玩具。

**waterfall** | The Niagara Falls is one of the most beautiful  
 ['wɔ:təfɔ:l] | **waterfalls** in the world.  
 n. 瀑布 | 尼亚加拉瀑布是世界上最美丽的瀑布之一。

**worm** [wɜ:m] | The **worm** turns the soil.  
 n. 虫 | 虫翻土。

**Exercise 6.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. A \_\_\_\_\_ hat protects us from the hot sun.
2. On the \_\_\_\_\_ the two men seemed friendly.
3. The President has \_\_\_\_\_ responsibilities for the nation.
4. Many Africans were captured and sold into \_\_\_\_\_.
5. We demanded more \_\_\_\_\_ in the food.

**【解答】** 1. straw      2. surface      3. tremendous  
 4. slavery      5. variety

## 效果检测

**Exercise 6.6** 找出一个与斜体词的意义最接近的单词:

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. her *method* of teaching children  
 (A) effort      (B) way      (C) ability      (D) opinion
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. a *prospect* of victory  
 (A) proposal      (B) hope      (C) motive      (D) woe
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. a humanistic *motive*  
 (A) suggestion      (B) conscience  
 (C) cause      (D) mercy
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. to *shed* tears of sorrow  
 (A) wash      (B) pour      (C) hurl      (D) retain

- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. an *accidental* happening  
(A) casual (B) unusual  
(C) usual (D) benevolent
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. a *spacious* hall  
(A) roomy (B) tremendous  
(C) magnificent (D) special
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. an *extraordinary* power  
(A) military (B) exceptional  
(C) foreign (D) human
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. a *remedy* for cancer  
(A) harness (B) cause (C) cure (D) pang
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. a *gleam* of firelight  
(A) blossom (B) bureau (C) flash (D) frost
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. at a *tremendous* speed  
(A) normal (B) dreadful (C) slow (D) specified

【解答】 1. B    2. B    3. C    4. B    5. A  
          6. A    7. B    8. C    9. C    10. B

**Exercise 6.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词:

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. 表面  
(A) deposit (B) surface (C) planet (D) slant
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. 良心  
(A) conscience (B) mammal  
(C) motive (D) pang
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. 虫  
(A) straw (B) limb (C) worm (D) dawn
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. 肢  
(A) limb (B) tick (C) fist (D) thumb

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. 魅力

(A) prospect (B) charm (C) cottage (D) palm

**【解答】** 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. B

**Exercise 6.8** 找出一个与斜体词的意义相反的单词：

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. *surface*

(A) bottom (B) conscience  
(C) bureau (D) hymn

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. *monotony*

(A) ambition (B) hardship  
(C) variety (D) nonsense

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. *dawn*

(A) dusk (B) daybreak  
(C) authority (D) blossom

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. *scarce*

(A) huge (B) common (C) religious (D) humble

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. *faint*

(A) dumb (B) notable (C) rare (D) strong

**【解答】** 1. A 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. D

**Exercise 6.9** 完整拼出下列句中所欠缺的单词：

1. He explained the new policy to the editorial s \_\_\_\_\_ f. (全体人员)

2. We heard someone s \_\_\_\_\_ m in fright. (尖叫)

3. She didn't like the work, because it lacked v \_\_\_\_\_ y. (多样性)

4. The child put the watch to his ear and listened to its t \_\_\_\_\_ k.  
(滴答声)
5. The doctor put some medicine in each n \_\_\_\_\_ l. (鼻孔)

**【解答】** 1. staff    2. scream    3. variety    4. tick  
5. nostril

**Exercise 6.10** 找出最符合句意的一个单词:

1. I want to run away, but my \_\_\_\_\_ bothers me.  
(A) pang    (B) remedy    (C) rust    (D) conscience
2. A boy who is filled with \_\_\_\_\_ always works hard.  
(A) vapor    (B) ambition  
(C) harness    (D) burden
3. He doesn't work in the office any longer; he \_\_\_\_\_ from his job several years ago.  
(A) retired    (B) retained  
(C) strained    (D) resumed
4. Her letter \_\_\_\_\_ us how and when she expected to arrive.  
(A) faded    (B) blessed  
(C) informed    (D) managed
5. I gave him my old text-books and received a dictionary in \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) exchange    (B) preparation  
(C) proposal    (D) proportion

**【解答】** 1. D    2. B    3. A    4. C    5. A

**Exercise 6.11** 将题前的斜体词转换为适当的词性,填入空格内:

1. *ambition* Jack is an \_\_\_\_\_ boy; he wants to become as famous as Edison.
2. *authority* I have \_\_\_\_\_ him to act for me while I am abroad.
3. *inform* Can you give me any \_\_\_\_\_ about this matter?
4. *retire* There have been several \_\_\_\_\_ recently.
5. *invite* I received an \_\_\_\_\_ card to her birthday party.

**【解答】** 1. ambitious 2. authorized 3. information  
4. retirements 5. invitation

## LESSON 7

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. A hard blow on the \_\_\_\_\_ *deafened* him for life.  
(A) ear (B) eye
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ car on the dirt raised a great *dust*.  
(A) standing (B) speeding
3. An *energetic* effort on the part of all members will ensure the  
\_\_\_\_\_ of our plan.  
(A) success (B) failure
4. We could see many *lambs* in the \_\_\_\_\_ on our way to school.  
(A) valley (B) river
5. The drunkard \_\_\_\_\_ a *pledge* never to drink again.  
(A) sold (B) signed

## ◆ 解 答 ◆

1. A 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. B

## 《第一部分》

**accompany**

[ə'kʌmpəni]

v. 1. 陪; 伴

2. 伴奏

He *accompanied* his girlfriend to the airport.

他陪着女朋友去机场。

She *accompanied* the singer on the piano.

她为演唱者担任钢琴伴奏。

<p><b>amuse</b>[ə'mju:z]</p> <p><i>v.</i> 使笑(乐)</p> <p><i>n.</i> amusement</p> <p><i>adj.</i> amusing</p>	<p>The storyteller's jokes <b>amused</b> the children.</p> <p>说书人的笑话逗乐了孩子们。</p>
<p><b>avoid</b>[ə'vɔɪd]</p> <p><i>v.</i> 避免</p> <p><i>n.</i> avoidance</p>	<p>Children should try to <b>avoid</b> crossing the road except when the policeman stops the traffic.</p> <p>孩子们应避免穿越马路,除非有警察禁止车辆通行。</p>
<p><b>bomb</b>[bɒm]</p> <p><i>n.</i> 炸弹</p>	<p>A time <b>bomb</b> explodes some time after it is placed in position. 定时炸弹被放置于确定的位置后,会在一段时间后爆炸。</p>
<p><b>burial</b>['berɪəl]</p> <p><i>n.</i> 葬礼</p>	<p>The <b>burial</b> of the dead sailor was performed at sea. 那死去船员的葬礼在海上举行。</p>
<p><b>chase</b>[tʃeɪs]</p> <p><i>v.</i> 追赶</p> <p>☐ flee</p>	<p>The old lady saw the thief running up the street and <b>chased</b> him on her bicycle. 老妇人看见小偷跑到街上,便骑着自行车去追他。</p>
<p><b>compel</b></p> <p>[kəm'pel]</p> <p><i>v.</i> 强迫</p>	<p>He was <b>compelled</b> by illness to give up his studies. 他因病被迫放弃学业。</p>
<p><b>consent</b></p> <p>[kən'sent]</p> <p><i>v.</i> 同意</p>	<p>He asked the girl to marry him and she <b>consented</b>.</p> <p>他请求那女孩嫁给他,她答应了。</p>
<p><b>counterpart</b></p> <p>['kauntəpɑ:t]</p> <p><i>n.</i> 1. 相当的人物</p>	<p>The Chinese foreign minister met his Canadian <b>counterpart</b>.</p> <p>中国外交部长会见加拿大外交部长。</p>

2. 配对物 | Your right hand is the **counterpart** of your left hand. 你的右手和你左手互相配对。

**deafen**['defən] | A sudden explosion **deafened** us for a moment.  
*v.* 使聋 | 突然的爆炸声使我们耳聋了一会儿。  
*adj.* deaf

**Exercise 7.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The rain \_\_\_\_\_ us to stop our ball game.
2. As soon as we saw the enemy ship, we began to \_\_\_\_\_ it.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ may be filled with a chemical substance and are sometimes dropped from aircraft.
4. The children \_\_\_\_\_ themselves by playing games while their parents talked.
5. The warships \_\_\_\_\_ the merchant-ships through the Mediterranean.

【解答】 1. compelled 2. chase 3. Bombs 4. amused  
 5. accompanied

《第二部分》

**derive**[dɪ'raɪv] | We have **derived** benefit from the new method of generation of electricity.  
*v.* 1. 获得 | 我们已从产生电力的新方法上获得益处。  
 2. 起源 | The word "deride" is **derived** from the Latin "de"(down) and "riddere"(to laugh). deride 这个词源于拉丁文 de(向下)和 riddere(笑)。

<p><b>display</b>[dis'pleɪ] v. 展示</p>	<p>Department stores <b>display</b> their goods in the windows. 百货公司在窗口展示他们的货物。</p>
<p><b>dust</b>[dʌst] n. 灰尘 adj. dusty</p>	<p>There was half an inch of <b>dust</b> on the books before I cleaned them. 在我清理这些书前,有半英寸的灰尘积在上面。</p>
<p><b>energetic</b> [ˌenə'dʒetɪk] adj. 精力充沛的</p>	<p>Cool autumn days make us feel <b>energetic</b>. 凉爽的秋天使我们感到精力充沛。</p>
<p><b>extent</b>[ɪks'tent] n. 广博;程度</p>	<p>I was amazed at the <b>extent</b> of his knowledge. 我对他知识的广博感到极为惊异。</p>
<p><b>fairy</b>['feəri] n. 小仙子</p>	<p>The <b>fairy</b> promised to grant the child's wish. 小仙子答应允诺那孩子的希望。</p>
<p><b>flatter</b>['flætə(r)] v. 奉承</p>	<p>He <b>flattered</b> her with flowers and expensive gifts. 他用花和昂贵的礼物讨好她。</p>
<p><b>frown</b>[fraʊn] v. 蹙额;不悦 同 scowl 反 smile</p>	<p>Mary wanted to go to Europe by herself, but her parents <b>frowned</b> on the idea. 玛丽想要独自去欧洲,可是她的父母不同意这个计划。</p>
<p><b>glimpse</b>[glɪmps] n. 一瞥</p>	<p>I caught a <b>glimpse</b> of the falls as our train went by. 当我们的火车经过时,我瞥见了瀑布。</p>
<p><b>harvest</b>['hɑ:vɪst] n. 收割 同 crop</p>	<p>The summer <b>harvest</b> is about to start. 夏收即将开始。</p>

**Exercise 7.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ much pleasure from reading adventure stories.
2. The motor car raised a terrible \_\_\_\_\_ as it passed us.
3. I agree with your plans, but only to a certain \_\_\_\_\_.
4. He was only \_\_\_\_\_ her when he said that she sang well; he didn't really mean it.
5. My grandmother always \_\_\_\_\_ when she's putting thread into a needle.

【解答】 1. derives 2. dust 3. extent 4. flattering  
5. frowns

《第三部分》

**inhabit**[ɪn'hæbɪt]  
v. 居住  
n. inhabitant

The earth we **inhabit** is a point in space.  
我们居住的地球只是宇宙中的一点。

**involve**[ɪn'vɒlv]  
v. 包括  
同 include  
☒ exempt, exclude

Housekeeping **involves** cooking, washing dishes, sweeping and cleaning.  
家务包括烹饪、洗碟、打扫及洗刷。

**lamb**[læm]  
n. 小羊

The **lambs** were playing on the hillside.  
小羊在山坡上玩耍。

**liquid**['lɪkwɪd]  
n. 液体  
adj. 流体的

Water, oil and milk are **liquids**.  
水、油和奶都是液体。  
The sick man could eat only **liquid** foods.  
那病人只能吃流质食物。

**mighty** ['maɪtɪ] | The **mighty** battleship was so badly damaged that it could not be used again.  
*adj.* 强大的  
 同 powerful 庞大的战舰受到严重的损害, 无法再使用。  
*n.* might

**mount** [maʊnt] | He **mounted** the bicycle and rode away.  
*v.* 1. 登上 他登上自行车后骑走了。  
 2. 骑上 The soldiers **mounted** on fine black horses.  
 士兵们骑在漂亮的黑马上。

**notify** ['nəʊtɪfaɪ] | Our teacher **notified** us that there would be a test on Monday.  
*v.* 通知  
 同 inform 老师通知我们星期一要考试。

**orbit** ['ɔ:bit] | The moon travels in an **orbit** around the earth.  
*n.* 轨道 月球在绕着地球的轨道上运行。

**paradise** | The island was a **paradise** of birds and flowers.  
 ['pærədəɪs]  
*n.* 天堂 这座岛屿是花和鸟的天堂。  
 同 heaven 同 hell

**peer** [piə(r)] | She **peered** through the mist, trying to find the right way.  
*v.* 细看  
 同 stare 她透过雾仔细看, 想找到正确的路。

**Exercise 7.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. A person as good as he deserves to go to \_\_\_\_\_.
2. He lifted up his little son, and \_\_\_\_\_ him on the donkey.
3. Jelly is not \_\_\_\_\_ but solid.
4. When my guest arrives, please \_\_\_\_\_ me.

5. The United States of America is one of the \_\_\_\_\_ nations in the world.

【解答】 1. paradise      2. mounted      3. liquid  
4. notify              5. mightiest

《第四部分》

**pledge** [pledʒ] | I give my *pledge* that I will continue to help you. 我保证会继续帮助你。  
*n.* 保证  
*v.* 发誓  
 同 promise, vow | They *pledged* themselves never to tell secrets. 他们发誓绝不泄密。

**pressure** | The air *pressure* at sea level is nearly 15 pounds for each square inch.  
 ['preʃə(r)] | 海平面上的大气压力每平方英寸有 15 磅。  
*n.* 压力  
*v.* press

**prosper** | His business *prospered* at its new location.  
 ['prɒspə(r)] | 他在新地点的生意兴隆。  
*v.* 兴隆

**raw** [rɔ:] | Children like to eat *raw* fruits.  
*adj.* 生的 | 孩子们喜欢吃生的水果。  
 同 unripe

**remind** | This picture *reminds* me of the story I heard before. 这幅画使我想起以前听过的故事。  
 [rɪ'maɪnd] |  
*v.* 使想起; 提醒

**retreat**[ri'tri:t] | The enemy **retreated** before the advance of our soldiers.  
*v.* 退却  
 敌军在我们士兵的进攻下退却了。

**sacred**['seikrɪd] | The *Bible* and *Koran* are **sacred** writings.  
*adj.* 宗教上的;  
 神圣的  
 《圣经》和《可兰经》都是宗教性著作。

**screen**[skri:n] | We have **screens** at the windows to keep out flies. 我们的窗上有纱以防苍蝇。  
*n.* 纱; 银幕

**shelf**[ʃelf] | The wrecked ship rested on a **shelf** at the bottom of the sea.  
*n.* 1. 暗礁  
 破毁的船只搁置在海底的暗礁上。  
 2. 架; 书架  
 I kept that book on the bottom **shelf**.  
 我把那本书放在底层的书架上。

**sleeve**[sli:v] | The **sleeves** of his coat are too long.  
*n.* 袖  
 他外套的袖子太长了。

**Exercise 7.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. I've forgotten what you said. Will you \_\_\_\_\_ me of it?
2. The defeated army had to \_\_\_\_\_ hastily from the battlefield.
3. In India, the cow is a \_\_\_\_\_ animal.
4. The tailor shortened the \_\_\_\_\_ of his shirt.
5. The windows were covered with \_\_\_\_\_ to keep out insects.

【解答】 1. remind 2. retreat 3. sacred 4. sleeves  
 5. screens

## 《第五部分》

<b>spare</b> [spɛə(r)] <i>v.</i> 赦免 <i>adj.</i> 空暇的	Take my money but <i>spare</i> my life! 拿走我的钱,但饶了我的命。 She is looking for something to read in her <i>spare</i> time. 她正在找些能在闲暇时阅读的东西。
<b>stability</b> [stə'biləti] <i>n.</i> 稳固 <i>adj.</i> stable	A concrete wall has more <i>stability</i> than a wooden fence. 水泥墙比木栅栏稳固得多。
<b>strawberry</b> ['strɔ:bəri] <i>n.</i> 草莓	We had <i>strawberries</i> and ice cream for dessert. 我们用草莓和冰淇淋当点心。
<b>surgeon</b> ['sɜ:dʒən] <i>n.</i> 外科医生	A <i>surgeon</i> took out Fred's tonsils. 外科医生取出了弗雷德的扁桃体。
<b>task</b> [tɑ:sk] <i>n.</i> 工作  assignment, job	The President has to perform many <i>tasks</i> . 总统必须执行许多工作。
<b>tide</b> [taɪd] <i>n.</i> 潮 <i>cf.</i> ebb	They liked to walk along the beach at low <i>tide</i> . 他们喜欢在落潮时沿着海滨散步。
<b>trial</b> ['traɪəl] <i>n.</i> 1. 试验 2. 审讯	She learned to cook by <i>trial</i> . 她通过不断的尝试学习烹饪。 In the <i>trial</i> , she changed her previous statement. 在审讯时,她改变了先前的陈述。



- |           |                |              |
|-----------|----------------|--------------|
|           | (C) show       | (D) reveal   |
| _____ 3.  | (A) defeat     | (B) consent  |
|           | (C) agree      | (D) assent   |
| _____ 4.  | (A) compel     | (B) force    |
|           | (C) impel      | (D) reject   |
| _____ 5.  | (A) vast       | (B) immense  |
|           | (C) stable     | (D) huge     |
| _____ 6.  | (A) pledge     | (B) promise  |
|           | (C) preserve   | (D) vow      |
| _____ 7.  | (A) energetic  | (B) swift    |
|           | (C) active     | (D) vigorous |
| _____ 8.  | (A) job        | (B) task     |
|           | (C) assignment | (D) bureau   |
| _____ 9.  | (A) extent     | (B) range    |
|           | (C) burial     | (D) scope    |
| _____ 10. | (A) raw        | (B) solemn   |
|           | (C) sacred     | (D) holy     |

**【解答】** 1. D    2. B    3. A    4. D    5. C  
6. C    7. B    8. D    9. C    10. A

**Exercise 7.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词：

- |          |      |              |              |
|----------|------|--------------|--------------|
| _____ 1. | 小仙女  | (A) twilight | (B) charm    |
|          |      | (C) fairy    | (D) squirrel |
| _____ 2. | 袖子   | (A) staff    | (B) sleeve   |
|          |      | (C) straw    | (D) slant    |
| _____ 3. | 外科医生 |              |              |

- (A) surgeon (B) physician  
 (C) suggestion (D) colleague
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. 空暇的  
 (A) sour (B) stout  
 (C) spacious (D) spare
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. 使笑  
 (A) amuse (B) prosper  
 (C) tap (D) peck

**【解答】** 1. C 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. A

**Exercise 7.8** 找出一个与斜体词的意义相反的单词:

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. *profane*  
 (A) secular (B) sacred  
 (C) peculiar (D) extreme
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. *flee*  
 (A) chase (B) discharge  
 (C) lose (D) vanish
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. *exempt*  
 (A) retire (B) notify  
 (C) involve (D) faint
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. *advance*  
 (A) ensure (B) retreat  
 (C) affect (D) reveal
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. *tiny*  
 (A) vast (B) witty  
 (C) dumb (D) dim

**【解答】** 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. A



- (C) request (D) guess
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. When I asked him a question, the old man *peered* at me over his glasses.  
 (A) pecked (B) stared  
 (C) screamed (D) scratched
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. The soldiers stood beside their horses, waiting for the order to *mount*.  
 (A) relieve (B) run  
 (C) dismiss (D) climb
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Seeing the big dog, the boys *retreated* rapidly.  
 (A) advanced (B) screamed  
 (C) withdrew (D) vanished
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. He gave the machine another *trial* to see if it would work.  
 (A) motion (B) testing  
 (C) pressure (D) flame
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Jane's *task* is to set the table.  
 (A) assignment (B) distress  
 (C) tide (D) rust

【解答】 1. D    2. C    3. A    4. B    5. A  
 6. B    7. D    8. C    9. B    10. A

## LESSON 8

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. The *lame* boy could not \_\_\_\_\_ fast.  
(A) speak (B) walk
2. A \_\_\_\_\_ lowered the *anchor* easily.  
(A) sailor (B) surgeon
3. The whole nation *mourned* the \_\_\_\_\_ of the much-loved king.  
(A) birth (D) death
4. He *pretended* to like the meal so that he \_\_\_\_\_ offend his wife.  
(A) wouldn't (B) would
5. The little girl was so \_\_\_\_\_ that she *blushed* every time she was spoken to.  
(A) vigorous (B) shy

## ◆ 解 答 ◆

1. B 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. B

## 《第一部分》

<p><b>accomplish</b> [ə'kɒmplɪʃ]</p> <p>v. 达到</p> <p>n. accomplishment</p>	<p>How many years did it take to <i>accomplish</i> your purpose?</p> <p>你为了达到目的花费了多少年?</p>
--	--

<p><b>anchor</b> [ˈæŋkə(r)] n. 锚</p>	<p>The <b>anchor</b> caught in the mud of the lake bottom and kept the boat from moving. 锚钩住湖底的泥巴,使船不致移动。</p>
<p><b>awaken</b> [əˈweɪkən] v. 醒 同 awake</p>	<p>The sun was shining when I <b>awakened</b> this morning. 我今早醒来时,艳阳高照。</p>
<p><b>blush</b>[blʌʃ] v. 脸红</p>	<p>She <b>blushed</b> as red as a rose with shame. 她羞愧得脸像玫瑰一般红。</p>
<p><b>bush</b>[buʃ] n. 灌木</p>	<p>He came out of the shadow of the <b>bush</b> and blinked in the sun. 他从灌木阴下出来,在阳光下眨着眼。</p>
<p><b>cheat</b>[tʃi:t] v. 欺骗 同 deceive</p>	<p>The boy doesn't study hard, and he always <b>cheats</b> in examinations. 那男孩子不用功,总是在考试时作弊。</p>
<p><b>compete</b> [kəmˈpi:t] v. 竞争 n. competition</p>	<p>The rival schools <b>competed</b> for the football trophy. 各参赛学校为足球奖而竞争。</p>
<p><b>consequence</b> [ˈkɒnsɪkwəns] n. 结果 adj. consequent</p>	<p>He fell ill and the <b>consequence</b> was that he lost his position. 他生病的结果是失了业。</p>

<p><b>courage</b></p> <p>[ 'kʌrɪdʒ ]</p> <p><i>n.</i> 勇气</p> <p><i>adj.</i> courageous</p>	<p><i>Courage</i> is the ability to control fear, not the absence of fear.</p> <p>勇气是指克制恐惧的能力,而非全然无惧。</p>
--	---

<p><b>debate</b> [ dɪ 'beɪt ]</p> <p><i>v.</i> 讨论</p> <p> discuss, argue</p>	<p>The question of whether war can be abolished has often been <i>debated</i>.</p> <p>战争能否废止的问题常被讨论。</p>
---	--

**Exercise 8.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ the old woman by making her sign a paper she didn't understand.
2. The man was highly praised for having the \_\_\_\_\_ to go into the burning house to save the little girl.
3. We were \_\_\_\_\_ whether to go to the mountain or to the seaside for our summer holidays.
4. The horse was \_\_\_\_\_ against many fine horses for the first prize.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the heavy rain was the flooding of large areas of land.

<p><b>【解答】</b> 1. cheated      2. courage      3. debating</p> <p>4. competing      5. consequence</p>
--

~~~~~ 《第二部分》 ~~~~~

|                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>descend</b> [ dɪ 'send ]</p> <p><i>v.</i> 下降</p> <p> ascend</p> | <p>The sun slowly <i>descended</i> over the western hill.</p> <p>太阳慢慢落于西山。</p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>dispose</b>[dis'pəʊz]<br/> <i>v.</i> 1. 布置<br/>         2. 处理</p>                                                | <p>The general <i>disposed</i> soldiers for the coming battle. 将军为即将来临的战役布置士兵。<br/>         You'd better <i>dispose</i> of rubbish before you go out. 在你外出前,最好收拾一下垃圾。</p>                                           |
| <p><b>earnest</b>['ɜ:nɪst]<br/> <i>adj.</i> 真心的</p>                                                                    | <p>He made an <i>earnest</i> attempt to persuade her. 他真心想说服她。</p>                                                                                                                                                  |
| <p><b>enforce</b>[ɪn'fɔ:s]<br/> <i>v.</i> 执行<br/> <i>n.</i> enforcement</p>                                            | <p>Policemen and judges will <i>enforce</i> the laws of the city. 警察和法官将执行城市法规。</p>                                                                                                                                 |
| <p><b>extend</b>[ɪks'tend]<br/> <i>v.</i> 1. 伸出<br/>         2. 扩展<br/>         同 enlarge<br/> <i>n.</i> extension</p> | <p>He refused to take the hand I <i>extended</i> in friendship. 他拒绝握我基于友善而伸出的手。<br/>         An imperialistic country <i>extends</i> its power and influence into neighboring countries. 帝国主义国家将它的势力和影响扩展至邻近国家。</p> |
| <p><b>faithful</b>['feɪθfʊl]<br/> <i>adj.</i> 忠实的</p>                                                                  | <p>Dogs are always <i>faithful</i> to their masters. 狗总是对它们的主人忠心耿耿。</p>                                                                                                                                             |
| <p><b>flavor</b><br/>         ['flɛɪvə(r)]<br/> <i>n.</i> 味道<br/>         同 taste</p>                                  | <p>Chocolate and vanilla have different <i>flavors</i>. 巧克力和香草精的味道不同。</p>                                                                                                                                           |
| <p><b>frustrate</b><br/>         [frʌs'treɪt]<br/> <i>v.</i> 使受挫</p>                                                   | <p>His indifference <i>frustrated</i> the teacher's efforts. 他的漠不关心使老师的努力受挫。</p>                                                                                                                                    |

|                 |                                                                          |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>glorious</b> | A <i>glorious</i> victory could be attained only by effort and patience. |
| ['glɔ:riəs]     |                                                                          |
| <i>adj.</i> 光荣的 | 光荣的胜利只有靠努力和耐力才能获得。                                                       |
| <i>n.</i> glory |                                                                          |

|                   |                                                       |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>haste</b>      | Make <i>haste</i> , or you will miss the train again. |
| [heɪst]           |                                                       |
| <i>n.</i> 急忙      | 快一点, 否则你又会错过那一班火车。                                    |
| <i>adj.</i> hasty |                                                       |

**Exercise 8.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. All his \_\_\_\_\_ was of no use; he missed the last train.
2. The sun \_\_\_\_\_ behind the hills and it was dark everywhere.
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ student tried very hard to do his best.
4. A \_\_\_\_\_ friend is reliable and can be depended on to do his work.
5. The bad weather \_\_\_\_\_ our plan to a picnic.

|                                                                                                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>【解答】</b> 1. haste          2. descended          3. earnest<br>4. faithful          5. frustrated |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

~~~~~ **《第三部分》** ~~~~~

|                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| <b>identify</b>          | Can you <i>identify</i> a composer by listening to his music? |
| [aɪ'dentɪfaɪ]            |   |
| <i>v.</i> 认出             | 你能听音乐就辨别出它的曲作者吗?  |
| <i>n.</i> identification |   |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>injure</b>  | She was <i>injured</i> badly in the car accident yesterday. |
| ['ɪndʒə(r)]  |   |
| <i>v.</i> 伤害   | 她在昨天的车祸中受了重伤。   |
|  harm |   |

**irregular** [i'regjulə(r)]  
*adj.* 不规则的  
 同 unusual

Train schedules were *irregular* during the flood.  
 水灾期间, 火车班次不规则。

**lame** [leɪm]  
*adj.* 跛足的  
 同 crippled

The soldier is not able to walk normally because he is *lame* from an old wound.  
 那士兵因旧伤而跛足, 使他无法正常地行走。

**liquor** ['likə(r)]  
*n.* 酒类

Does this restaurant have a license to serve *liquor*? 这家餐厅有卖酒的执照吗?

**manly** ['mænli]  
*adj.* 有男子气概的  
 同 womanly  
 womanish

My aunt was a lady of strong mind and great resolution, she was a very *manly* woman.  
 我的婶婶意志坚强、有坚决果断力, 她是一个有男子气概的女人。

**mild** [maɪld]  
*adj.* 轻的, 温和的  
 同 gentle, kind

The thief was given a *milder* punishment than he deserved.  
 那小偷受到的惩罚比他应得的轻。

**mourn** [mɔ:n]  
*v.* 哀悼

All the people *mourned* the loss of their President. 所有的人都为总统的去世哀悼。

**notion** ['nəʊʃən]  
*n.* 想法

Your head is full of silly *notions*.  
 你脑子里充满愚蠢的想法。

**order** ['ɔ:də(r)]  
*n. v.* 命令

He gave *orders* that the work should be done at once.  
 他下命令, 工作应该立刻进行。

**Exercise 8.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. John could easily \_\_\_\_\_ his own son among many boys.
2. A soldier who doesn't obey \_\_\_\_\_ will be in serious trouble.
3. He \_\_\_\_\_ his leg when he fell over the big stone.
4. It was her \_\_\_\_\_ that planes were safer than trains.
5. He was \_\_\_\_\_ over the loss of his best friend.

【解答】 1. identify 2. orders 3. injured 4. notion  
5. mourning

《第四部分》

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p><b>paragraph</b><br/>[ˈpærəgrɑ:f]<br/>n. (文章的)段;节</p>     | <p>A new <b>paragraph</b> always begins on a new line.<br/>新的一段总是换行开始。</p>                    |
| <p><b>penalty</b> [ˈpenəltɪ]<br/>n. 刑罚</p>                   | <p>The <b>penalty</b> for his offense was five years in prison. 他犯罪的刑罚是监禁五年。</p>              |
| <p><b>pluck</b> [plʌk]<br/>v. 采;摘</p>                        | <p>Do not <b>pluck</b> the flowers in the garden, please. 请勿摘折花园里的花。</p>                      |
| <p><b>pretend</b> [prɪˈtend]<br/>v. 假装<br/>n. pretence</p>   | <p>He <b>pretended</b> to be asleep when his mother called him.<br/>他母亲叫他时,他假装睡着。</p>         |
| <p><b>protect</b> [prəˈtekt]<br/>v. 保护<br/>n. protection</p> | <p>We keep our army to <b>protect</b> our country from the enemy.<br/>我们保持军力,以保卫国家免受敌人侵犯。</p> |

**realize** [ˈriəlaɪz]  
*v.* 1. 了解  
 2. 实现  
*n.* realization

He didn't *realize* how cold it was until he went outside.  
 直到走到外头,他才知道天气有多冷。  
 He *realized* his dreams when he became a doctor. 当他成为医生时,实现了他的梦想。

**remove**  
 [ri'mu:v]  
*v.* 1. 迁移; 移开  
 2. 除去  
 同 eliminate

Our office has *removed* from New York to Chicago.  
 我们的办公室已从纽约迁到芝加哥。  
 She could not *remove* the spot from the carpet.  
 她无法除去地毯上的污迹。

**reveal** [ri'veɪl]  
*v.* 泄露  
*n.* revelation

Can you promise never to *reveal* my secret?  
 你能答应永远不泄露我的秘密吗?

**sacrifice**  
 ['sækrɪfaɪs]  
*v.* 牺牲  
*n.* 牺牲

A mother will *sacrifice* her life for her children.  
 母亲会为她的孩子牺牲生命。  
 Success is not worth the *sacrifice* of your health.  
 成功不值得你牺牲你的健康。

**screw** [skru:]  
*n.* 螺丝钉  
*v.* 用螺丝钉钉住

Turn the *screw* to the right to tighten it.  
 将螺丝钉向右旋转扭紧它。  
 The carpenter *screwed* a lock on the door.  
 木匠用螺丝钉将锁钉在门上。

**Exercise 8.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. She suddenly \_\_\_\_\_ the fact that she was not married.
2. Please \_\_\_\_\_ mud from your shoes before you get into the hall.
3. She \_\_\_\_\_ her dream of becoming an actress.

4. He raised his arm in order to \_\_\_\_\_ his face from the blow.  
 5. She wasn't really crying; she was only \_\_\_\_\_.

【解答】 1. revealed    2. remove    3. realized  
 4. protect    5. pretending

《第五部分》

**shell** [ʃel] | The cook broke the *shell* of an egg.  
*n.* 壳 厨子将蛋壳打破。  
 *core*

**slender** | She is a very *slender* blonde.  
 ['slendə(r)] 她是个非常苗条的金发女郎。  
*adj.* 苗条的

**sparkle** ['spɑ:kəl] | The lake *sparkled* in the sunshine.  
*v.* 闪耀 湖水在阳光下闪闪发光。

**stain** [steɪn] | He has ink *stains* on his shirt.  
*n.* 污点 他的衬衫上有墨水污点。  
 *spots*  
*v.* 被污 The tablecloth is *stained* where food has been spilled.  
 在食物洒出的地方, 桌布被弄脏了。

**stream** [stri:m] | They walked along the bank of the *stream*.  
*n.* 河; 溪 他们沿着河岸走。

**surrender** [sə'rendə(r)]  
*v.* 投降  
 同 yield

We advised the bandits to **surrender** themselves to the police.  
 我们劝强盗向警方自首。

**tasty** ['teɪstɪ]  
*adj.* 美味的  
*n.* taste

All of us have a **tasty** meal yesterday.  
 我们昨天都享受了一顿美味的饭食。

**tight** [taɪt]  
*adj.* 紧的  
*v.* tighten

The drawer is so **tight** that I can't open it.  
 抽屉太紧,我打不开。

**tribe** [traɪb]  
*n.* 部落

America was once the home of many Indian **tribes**.  
 美洲曾一度是许多印第安部落的家。

**weapon** ['wepən]  
*n.* 武器

The soldiers were cleaning their **weapons**.  
 士兵们在擦拭他们的武器。

**wreck** [rek]  
*v.* 拆毁  
 同 destroy  
*n.* 残骸

The building was **wrecked** because it was unsafe.  
 这栋建筑因为不安全而被拆除。  
 The **wreck** of the ship was reported last night.  
 船只的残骸于昨晚被发现。

**Exercise 8.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. There were blood \_\_\_\_\_ at the scene of the murder.
2. We will never \_\_\_\_\_ to the enemy.
3. Pack the cases as \_\_\_\_\_ as possible.
4. Guns are of little value against modern \_\_\_\_\_ in war.

5. Most girls want to be \_\_\_\_\_.

【解答】 1. stains 2. surrender 3. tight 4. weapons  
5. slender

## 效果检测

**Exercise 8.6** 找出一个与斜体词的意义最接近的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. a *slender* girl  
(A) thin (B) faint (C) tiny (D) small
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. a sweet *flavor*  
(A) blossom (B) flower (C) taste (D) pledge
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. to *compete* for prize  
(A) spare (B) contend (C) impel (D) amuse
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. to *surrender* unconditionally  
(A) conquer (B) love (C) escape (D) yield
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. to *identify* the coat at once  
(A) notify (B) display  
(C) disclose (D) recognize
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. to be *frustrated* by rain  
(A) cheated (B) disappointed  
(C) removed (D) compelled
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. to *injure* one's feelings  
(A) harm (B) control (C) reveal (D) flatter
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. the *consequence* of war  
(A) escape (B) outcome (C) trial (D) prospect
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. an *earnest* man  
(A) sincere (B) rich (C) strong (D) unusual

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. to *reveal* secrets

(A) identify (B) conceal (C) disclose (D) inform

**【解答】** 1. A    2. C    3. B    4. D    5. D  
6. B    7. A    8. B    9. A    10. C

**Exercise 8.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词：

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. 污点

(A) clan    (B) veil    (C) stain    (D) blush

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. 牺牲

(A) sacrifice    (B) stare    (C) deserve    (D) derive

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. 处理

(A) compete    (B) dispose    (C) perform    (D) worsen

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. 实现

(A) identify    (B) awaken    (C) realize    (D) stretch

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. 残骸

(A) woe    (B) screw    (C) shell    (D) wreck

**【解答】** 1. C    2. A    3. B    4. C    5. D

**Exercise 8.8** 找出一个与斜体词的意义相反的单词：

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. *courage*

(A) punishment    (B) cowardice  
(C) injury    (D) instability

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. *conceal*

(A) avoid    (B) debate    (C) deceive    (D) reveal

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. *consequence*

(A) haste    (B) result    (C) cause    (D) conscience

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. *insincere*

(A) faithful (B) extensive (C) mighty (D) profane

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. *ascend*

(A) frustrate (B) descend (C) protect (D) debate

**【解答】** 1. B 2. D 3. C 4. A 5. B

**Exercise 8.9** 完整拼出下列句中所欠缺的单词：

1. For the moment he didn't r \_\_\_\_\_ e his eyes from the face of the little girl. (移开)
2. Many children were swimming in the s \_\_\_\_\_ m. (溪)
3. She saw the diamonds s \_\_\_\_\_ e in the bright light. (闪耀)
4. He has too m \_\_\_\_\_ d a nature to get angry, even if he has good cause. (温和的)
5. It took three years to a \_\_\_\_\_ h his ambition. (达到)

**【解答】** 1. remove 2. stream 3. sparkle 4. mild  
5. accomplish

**Exercise 8.10** 选出最符合句意的一个单词：

1. In his attempt to escape, the prisoner was \_\_\_\_\_ by a watchful guard.  
(A) amused (B) frustrated (C) wrecked (D) plucked
2. Government makes laws and the police \_\_\_\_\_ them.  
(A) enforce (B) stretch (C) dispose (D) chase
3. The city \_\_\_\_\_ the road to the next town.  
(A) yielded (B) guarded (C) disposed (D) extended
4. A \_\_\_\_\_ friend keeps his promises.

- (A) solemn (B) splendid (C) faithful (D) lame
5. The sick man's heartbeat was \_\_\_\_\_.
- (A) irregular (B) raw (C) spare (D) tiny

【解答】 1. B 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. A

**Exercise 8.11** 将题前的斜体词转换为适当的词性, 填入空格内:

1. *haste* His \_\_\_\_\_ decisions caused many mistakes.
2. *frustrate* Life is full of \_\_\_\_\_ for most people.
3. *accomplish* She is known for her \_\_\_\_\_ in improving the country's hospitals.
4. *pretend* He often uses my car without my permission under the \_\_\_\_\_ of friendship.
5. *courage* It was \_\_\_\_\_ of you to try and save the drowning man.

【解答】 1. hasty 2. frustration 3. accomplishment  
4. pretence 5. courageous

## LESSON 9

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. When a man is *innocent*, he is \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) ignorant (B) guiltless
2. He *boasts* that he is the \_\_\_\_\_ billiard player in the town.  
(A) best (B) worst
3. A *peninsula* is surrounded on three sides by \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) islands (B) water
4. The person whose work is \_\_\_\_\_ animals for food is called a *butcher*.  
(A) killing (B) protecting
5. The man put a *saddle* on the \_\_\_\_\_ and ran away.  
(A) horse (B) bicycle

## ◆ 解 答 ◆

1. B 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. A

## 《第一部分》

**accord**[ə'kɔ:d]

v. 符合

 concur discordWhat you have just said does not **accord** with what you told us yesterday.

你刚才说的和你昨天告诉我们的不符。

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p><b>award</b>[ə'wɔ:d]<br/>v. 授予</p>                                      | <p>He was <b>awarded</b> the first prize in the speech contest. 他在演讲比赛中被授予头奖。</p>   |
| <p><b>boast</b>[bəʊst]<br/>v. 夸耀</p>                                       | <p>He <b>boasted</b> about the big fish he had caught. 他夸耀他抓到的大鱼。</p>   |
| <p><b>butcher</b><br/>['bʊtʃə(r)]<br/>n. 肉店; 屠夫</p>                        | <p>You can buy meat at the <b>butcher's</b> shop. 你可以在肉店买肉。</p>   |
| <p><b>cheek</b>[tʃi:k]<br/>n. 颊</p>  | <p>Her <b>cheeks</b> went red after she broke the window. 她打破窗子后, 满脸通红。</p>   |
| <p><b>competent</b><br/>['kɒmpɪtənt]<br/>adj. 1. 胜任的<br/>2. 充分的</p>        | <p>He is not <b>competent</b> enough to do the job. 他无法胜任那件工作。<br/>Before you can be a lawyer, you must have a <b>competent</b> knowledge of the law. 在你成为律师前, 必须具有足够的法律知识。</p> |
| <p><b>consist</b><br/>[kən'sɪst]<br/>v. 1. 组成<br/>同 comprise<br/>2. 存在</p> | <p>The United Kingdom <b>consists</b> of Great Britain and the Northern Ireland. 英国是由大不列颠和北爱尔兰组成的。<br/>Happiness <b>consists</b> in contentment. 幸福在于知识。</p>                    |
| <p><b>crack</b>[kræk]<br/>n. 裂缝<br/>同 crevice</p>                          | <p>There is a <b>crack</b> in the ice. Don't skate around here. 冰上有道裂缝, 不要在这附近溜冰。</p>   |

**debt**[det] | He was in *debt* when he was poor, but has  
*n.* 债务 | been out of *debt* since he got rich. 他贫穷时负  
 债,可是自从他有钱后,已经还清了债务。

**describe** | The reporter *described* the accident in detail.  
 [dis'kraɪb] | 记者详尽地描述了那起意外事件。  
*v.* 描述  
*n.* description

**Exercise 9.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. I owe him a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of gratitude for all he has done to help me.
2. His account of the accident seems to \_\_\_\_\_ with yours.
3. It is unpleasant to hear one \_\_\_\_\_ about his own abilities, achievements or possessions.
4. His horse was \_\_\_\_\_ the highest prize at the horse-show.
5. Happiness \_\_\_\_\_ largely in being easily pleased or satisfied.

【解答】 1. debt    2. accord    3. boast    4. awarded  
 5. consists

《第二部分》

**dispute** | They *disputed* for hours where to go for their  
 [dis'pjʊt] | picnic.  
*n.* 争论 | 他们为去哪里野餐争论了好几个小时。

**ease**[i:z] | The soldiers marched twenty miles with *ease*.  
*n.* 轻松 | 士兵们轻松地前进了 20 英里。  
*adj.* easy

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><b>engage</b><br/>[ɪn'geɪdʒ]<br/>v. 1. 雇用<br/>2. 忙于<br/>n. engagement</p> | <p>She <b>engaged</b> a carpenter to repair the sofa and the table.<br/>她雇了一个木匠来修理沙发和桌子。<br/>The old lady <b>engaged</b> herself in making clothes for her neighbor's children.<br/>那老妇人忙着为邻家的孩子做衣服。</p> |
| <p><b>express</b><br/>[ɪks'pres]<br/>v. 表达<br/>n. expression</p>             | <p>He is still unable to <b>express</b> himself in English.<br/>他仍然无法用英语表达自己的意思。</p>   |
| <p><b>fancy</b> ['fænsɪ]<br/>n. 想像力<br/>adj. fanciful</p>                    | <p>By the power of <b>fancy</b>, we may create an unreal world.<br/>借助于想像力,我们可以创造一个虚幻不实的世界。</p>  |
| <p><b>flee</b> [fli:]<br/>v. 逃跑<br/>同 fly, escape</p>                        | <p>The enemy were defeated and <b>fled</b> in disorder.<br/>敌军溃败而逃。</p>  |
| <p><b>fulfil</b> (l)<br/>[fʊl'fɪl]<br/>v. 实践</p>                             | <p>If you make a promise, you should <b>fulfil</b> it.<br/>如果你许下诺言,就应该实践它。</p>   |
| <p><b>grace</b> [greɪs]<br/>n. 优雅</p>  | <p>The ballet dancer danced with much <b>grace</b>.<br/>那个芭蕾舞演员的舞步极为优雅。</p>  |
| <p><b>haunt</b> [hɔ:nt]<br/>v. (鬼)出没</p>                                     | <p>People say that the old house is <b>haunted</b> by a ghost. 据说那栋旧宅里有鬼出没。</p>  |

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| <b>innocent</b> | Is he guilty or <i>innocent</i> of the crime? |
| [ 'ɪnəsənt ]    | 他是有罪还是无罪?                                     |
| adj. 无罪的        |   |

**Exercise 9.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The robbers tried to \_\_\_\_\_ but they were caught soon.
2. The old woman \_\_\_\_\_ a maid servant to clean her house.
3. His speech was full of \_\_\_\_\_ and wit.
4. A nurse has many duties to \_\_\_\_\_ in caring for the sick.
5. They were still \_\_\_\_\_ the rights and wrongs of the case at midnight.

【解答】 1. flee    2. engaged    3. grace    4. fulfil  
5. disputing

《第三部分》

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>issue</b>  | The government <i>issues</i> money and stamps.    |
| [ 'ɪʃju:, 'ɪsju: ]  | 政府发行钞票和邮票。  |
| n. 1. 发行  |   |
| 2. 出版   | This book was <i>issued</i> in New York in 1972.  |
|  publish | 这本书于 1972 年在纽约出版。                                 |
| 3. 流出   | A lot of blood was <i>issuing</i> from the wound. |
|   | 大量的血正从伤口流出。                                       |

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| <b>landlord</b> | The <i>landlord</i> put a new stove in my room. |
| [ 'lændlə:d ]   | 房东在我的房间里放了一个新暖炉。                                |
| n. 房东           |   |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><b>literature</b><br/>                     ['lɪtərətʃə(r)]<br/> <i>n.</i> 文学<br/> <i>adj.</i> literary</p>                                      | <p>Many foreigners are studying Chinese <i>literature</i>.<br/>                     许多外国人正在学习中国文学。</p>   |
| <p><b>manufacture</b><br/>                     [ˌmænjuˈfæktʃə(r)]<br/> <i>n.</i> 制造<br/> <i>v.</i> 制造<br/>                     同 make, produce</p> | <p>The <i>manufacture</i> of watches is the chief business of Switzerland.<br/>                     钟表制造是瑞士的主要行业。<br/>                     The factory <i>manufactures</i> automobiles in large quantity by using machines.<br/>                     该工厂使用机器制造大量的汽车。</p> |
| <p><b>military</b><br/>                     ['mɪlɪtəri]<br/> <i>n.</i> 军队<br/>                     同 civilian</p>                                  | <p>In some countries every healthy young man must do 2 or 3 years' <i>military</i> service.<br/>                     在某些国家,所有年轻力壮的男子都必须服两年或三年的兵役。</p>  |
| <p><b>multiply</b><br/>                     ['mʌltɪplaɪ]<br/> <i>v.</i> 增加</p>   | <p>The population of the city is <i>multiplying</i> rapidly.<br/>                     该市人口正迅速地增加。</p>  |
| <p><b>numerous</b><br/>                     ['nju:mərəs]<br/> <i>adj.</i> 极多的</p>  | <p>Children often asked <i>numerous</i> questions about the universe.<br/>                     孩子们经常问许多有关宇宙的问题。</p>  |
| <p><b>ordinary</b><br/>                     ['ɔ:dɪnəri]<br/> <i>adj.</i> 通常的<br/>                     同 common</p>                                 | <p>His <i>ordinary</i> lunch consists of soup, a sandwich and milk.<br/>                     他平常的午餐包括汤、一个三明治还有牛奶。</p>  |

|                         |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| <b>pardon</b> [ˈpɑːdən] | I beg your <b>pardon</b> for being late.         |
| n. 原谅                   | 请你原谅我迟到。   |
| v. 原谅                   | We must <b>pardon</b> him for his little faults. |
| 同 excuse, forgive       | 我们必须原谅他的小错。                                      |

|                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| <b>peninsula</b> | Spain or Italy is a <b>peninsula</b> . |
| [piˈnɪnsjələ]    | 西班牙或意大利都是个半岛。                          |
| n. 半岛            |  |

**Exercise 9.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The chimney \_\_\_\_\_ smoke from the fireplace.
2. As we climbed up the mountain the dangers and difficulties \_\_\_\_\_.
3. At night we can see \_\_\_\_\_ stars in the sky.
4. Shakespeare is a great name in English \_\_\_\_\_.
5. I beg your \_\_\_\_\_, but I didn't hear you.

【解答】 1. issues      2. multiplied      3. numerous  
4. literature      5. pardon

《第四部分》

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| <b>plunge</b> [plʌndʒ] | He <b>plunged</b> into the river and saved the boy. |
| v. 跳入                  | 他跳入河中救起那男孩。   |

|                |  |
|----------------|--|
| <b>prevent</b> | A heavy rain <b>prevented</b> us from going on a picnic. |
| [prɪˈvent]     |  |
| v. 阻碍          | 大雨使我们不能去野餐。  |

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <p><b>protest</b><br/>[prə'test]<br/>v. 反对<br/>同 object</p> | <p>Most of them <i>protested</i> against the new heavy tax.<br/>他们大多数反对新的重税。</p>   |
| <p><b>rear</b>[riə(r)]<br/>n. 后面<br/>同 back 反 front</p>     | <p>The people in the <i>rear</i> of the room couldn't hear the speaker.<br/>房间后面的人听不到演说者的声音。</p>   |
| <p><b>rent</b>[rent]<br/>n. 租金<br/>v. 租</p>                 | <p><i>Rent</i> for that three-bedroom apartment is \$ 500 a month.<br/>这栋有三间卧室的公寓, 每月租金 500 美元。<br/>We don't own our house, we <i>rent</i> it from Mr. Gay.<br/>我们住的房子不是自己的, 是向盖伊先生租的。</p> |
| <p><b>revenge</b><br/>[ri'vendʒ]<br/>n. 复仇</p>              | <p>His mind was filled with <i>revenge</i>.<br/>他心中充满复仇之意。</p>   |
| <p><b>saddle</b>['sædl]<br/>n. 马鞍</p>                       | <p>It is difficult to ride a horse without a <i>saddle</i>.<br/>没有马鞍骑马很困难。</p>   |
| <p><b>seal</b>[si:l]<br/>n. 封印<br/>v. 盖章</p>                | <p>The paper had been stamped with the required official <i>seal</i>.<br/>这份文件已印有必需的官方封印。<br/>The treaty was signed and <i>sealed</i> by both governments.<br/>两国政府都在条约上签字盖章。</p>          |

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>shelter</b>  | The cave provided a good <i>shelter</i> for the ancient people. |
| [ˈʃeltə(r)]   |   |
| <i>n.</i> 避难所   | 洞穴为古人提供了一个良好的避难所。   |
|  <i>refuge</i> | The abandoned car <i>sheltered</i> them from the rain.          |
| <i>v.</i> 遮蔽  | 那部被丢弃的车子供他们躲雨。  |

|                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| <b>slice</b> [slaɪs] | He ate two <i>slices</i> of bread for his breakfast. |
| <i>n.</i> 片          | 他早餐吃了两片面包。   |

**Exercise 9.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ for the house was more than they could afford.
2. The garage is usually at the \_\_\_\_\_ of a house.
3. There was a large crowd in the street, \_\_\_\_\_ against the war.
4. Illness \_\_\_\_\_ him from taking the examination.
5. The fireman \_\_\_\_\_ into the burning house to rescue the baby in it.

**【解答】** 1. rent                      2. rear                      3. protesting  
4. prevented                      5. plunged

《第五部分》

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| <b>spear</b> [spiə(r)] | In Africa <i>spears</i> are still used in hunting or fishing. |
| <i>n.</i> 矛;鱼叉         | 在非洲,矛和鱼叉仍然被用来打猎或捕鱼。   |

|                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| <b>stake</b> [steɪk] | <i>Stakes</i> mark the boundary of his ranch.                                 |
| <i>n.</i> 1. 木桩      | 木桩用来标出他农场的范围。   |
| 2. 利害关系              | As a partner, he has a <i>stake</i> in that business.<br>身作为一个股东,他和那个公司有利害关系。 |

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <p><i>v.</i> 赌<br/> <input type="checkbox"/> bet</p>  | <p>He <i>staked</i> all his money on the black horse.<br/>         他将所有的钱赌在那匹黑马上。</p>   |
| <p><b>stretch</b>[stretʃ]<br/> <i>v.</i> 伸出<br/> <input type="checkbox"/> extend</p>              | <p>The beggar <i>stretched</i> out his hand for the money.<br/>         那乞丐伸出手要钱。</p>   |
| <p><b>surround</b><br/>         [sə'raʊnd]<br/> <i>v.</i> 包围<br/> <i>n.</i> surrounding</p>       | <p>The field is <i>surrounded</i> by a high fence.<br/>         那块田被高篱所围。</p>   |
| <p><b>tavern</b><br/>         ['tævən]<br/> <i>n.</i> 酒店;旅店</p>                                   | <p>They met at the <i>tavern</i> for a drink.<br/>         他们为喝酒在酒店里见面。</p>   |
| <p><b>timber</b>['timbə(r)]<br/> <i>n.</i> 森林;木材<br/> <input type="checkbox"/> lumber</p>         | <p>The fire destroyed thousands of acres of <i>timber</i>.<br/>         大火烧毁了数千英亩的森林。</p>   |
| <p><b>trick</b>[trɪk]<br/> <i>n.</i> 戏法<br/> <i>v.</i> 欺骗<br/> <input type="checkbox"/> cheat</p> | <p>The <i>tricks</i> of the magician delighted the children. 魔术师的戏法使孩子们高兴。<br/>         We were <i>tricked</i> into buying a poor car.<br/>         我们被骗买了一部破车。</p> |
| <p><b>vein</b>[veɪn]<br/> <i>n.</i> 静脉<br/> <input type="checkbox"/> artery</p>                   | <p>Blood poured from the cut <i>vein</i>.<br/>         血从割开的静脉中流出。</p>  |
| <p><b>weaken</b><br/>         ['wi:kən]<br/> <i>v.</i> 使弱<br/> <i>adj.</i> weak</p>               | <p>The illness <i>weakened</i> her heart.<br/>         她的病使得她的心脏衰弱。</p>   |

**wring** [rɪŋ] | I'll **wring** your neck if you don't behave well.  
 v. 扭; 绞 | 如果你表现不好, 我会扭断你的脖子。  
 同 twist

**Exercise 9.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The bird \_\_\_\_\_ its wings when it wants to fly.
2. The soldiers \_\_\_\_\_ the enemies in the town.
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ carried the blood to the heart from all parts of the body.
4. She \_\_\_\_\_ as her illness grew worse.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ the water from your bathing suit.

**【解答】** 1. stretches      2. surrounded      3. vein  
 4. weakened      5. Wring

## 效果检测

**Exercise 9.6** 找出一个与其他三个不相关的词:

- |          |                |                 |
|----------|----------------|-----------------|
| _____ 1. | (A) accomplish | (B) perform     |
|          | (C) stretch    | (D) fulfil      |
| _____ 2. | (A) make       | (B) manufacture |
|          | (C) produce    | (D) wring       |
| _____ 3. | (A) defeat     | (B) express     |
|          | (C) reveal     | (D) represent   |
| _____ 4. | (A) twist      | (B) squeeze     |
|          | (C) yield      | (D) wring       |
| _____ 5. | (A) protection | (B) revenge     |
|          | (C) refuge     | (D) shelter     |

- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. (A) many (B) plentiful  
 (C) numerous (D) extensive
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. (A) concur (B) harmonize  
 (C) achieve (D) accord
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. (A) flee (B) fly  
 (C) escape (D) chase
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. (A) ordinary (B) useful  
 (C) common (D) average
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. (A) landlord (B) host  
 (C) rent (D) innkeeper

**【解答】** 1. C 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. B  
 6. D 7. C 8. D 9. B 10. C

**Exercise 9.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. 优雅  
 (A) reverse (B) grace (C) blush (D) clean
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. 扭  
 (A) wing (B) ring (C) wring (D) seal
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. 出没  
 (A) haunt (B) flee (C) multiply (D) enclose
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. 伸出  
 (A) pretend (B) fulfil (C) spare (D) stretch
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. 戏法  
 (A) seal (B) trick (C) screw (D) stain

**【解答】** 1. B 2. C 3. A 4. D 5. B

**Exercise 9.8** 找出一个与斜体词的意义相反的单词:

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. *chase*  
 (A) assume (B) flee (C) wreck (D) conceal
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. *artery*  
 (A) vein (B) veil  
 (C) manufacture (D) literature
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. *front*  
 (A) revenge (B) opposite (C) sleeve (D) rear
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. *discord*  
 (A) baffle (B) mourn  
 (C) haunt (D) harmonize
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. *dismiss*  
 (A) discharge (B) engage (C) disclose (D) find

**【解答】** 1. B 2. A 3. D 4. D 5. B

**Exercise 9.9** 完整拼出下列句中所欠缺的单词:

1. Hamlet wanted r \_\_\_\_\_ e for his father's murder. (复仇)
2. He found a room for the night at t \_\_\_\_\_ n. (旅店)
3. His peaceful words and violent actions do not a \_\_\_\_\_ d. (符合)
4. What kind of t \_\_\_\_\_ r was used for the frame of the house? (木材)
5. You can w \_\_\_\_\_ n tea by adding water. (使弱)

**【解答】** 1. revenge 2. tavern 3. accord  
 4. timber 5. weaken

**Exercise 9.10** 找出一个与斜体词的意义最接近的单词:

1. He threw the mirror on the floor, but there was not a *crack* in

- it.  
 (A) sound (B) crevice (C) stake (D) trick
2. That magazine is *issued* once a month.  
 (A) sold (B) bought (C) published (D) shown
3. If you want to learn German, you must first find a *competent* teacher.  
 (A) capable (B) faithful (C) honorable (D) sacred
4. Some husbands and wives are always *disputing*.  
 (A) discharging (B) disposing  
 (C) competing (D) arguing
5. Whate *consists* of hydrogen and oxygen.  
 (A) disposes (B) comprises (C) derives (D) involves
6. The children *protested* loudly when they were told to bed.  
 (A) objected (B) protected  
 (C) discorded (D) revenged
7. They *engaged* a man to paint their new house.  
 (A) employed (B) forced  
 (C) dismissed (D) pardoned
8. Did I really hear someone come in or was it only a *fancy*?  
 (A) notion (B) flavor (C) grace (D) illusion
9. The old house is *enclosed* by trees.  
 (A) protected (B) prevented  
 (C) disclosed (D) surrounded
10. *Forgive* my mistakes. I'll try not to make the same mistakes.  
 (A) mourn (B) deter (C) pardon (D) forget

【解答】 1. B 2. C 3. A 4. D 5. B  
 6. A 7. A 8. D 9. D 10. C

## LESSON 10

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. The *fleet* has a lot of \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) warships (B) cars
2. Make *hay* while \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) it is raining (B) the sun shines
3. When a person is \_\_\_\_\_, he is *ignorant*.  
(A) guiltless (B) uneducated
4. John is guilty of *murder*; he \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) killed someone (B) stole something
5. A \_\_\_\_\_ citizen *obeys* the laws of his country.  
(A) good (B) bad

## ◆ 解 答 ◆

1.A 2.B 3.B 4.A 5.A

## 《第一部分》

**account**

[ə'kaunt]

n. 叙述

The boy gave his father an **account** of the ball game.

那男孩向他父亲讲述球赛的经过。

**angle** [ 'æŋgl ]

n. 角

An **angle** of 90 degrees is called a right **angle**.

90 度的角叫作直角。

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <p><b>aware</b>[ə'weə(r)]<br/> <i>adj.</i> 觉察的<br/> <i>n.</i> awareness</p>                       | <p>I was too sleepy to be <b>aware</b> of how cold it was.<br/>           我太困了以致无法觉察出有多冷。</p>   |
| <p><b>bold</b>[bəʊld]<br/> <i>adj.</i> 大胆的<br/>           同 cowardly</p>                          | <p>Climbing the steep mountain is a <b>bold</b> act.<br/>           爬那座险峻的山是大胆的行动。</p>  |
| <p><b>cabin</b>['kæbɪn]<br/> <i>n.</i> 小屋</p>   | <p>The pioneers lived in a <b>cabin</b> in the woods.<br/>           拓荒者住在森林中的一间小屋里。</p>  |
| <p><b>cheer</b>[tʃiə(r)]<br/> <i>v.</i> 使高兴<br/>           同 acclaim</p>                          | <p>Everyone was <b>cheered</b> by the news that peace had come.<br/>           和平到来的消息使每一个人都高兴。</p>   |
| <p><b>complain</b><br/>           [kəm'pleɪn]<br/> <i>v.</i> 抱怨<br/> <i>n.</i> complaint</p>      | <p>She <b>complained</b> to the police about the barking of her neighbor's dog.<br/>           她向警方抱怨邻家的狗叫声。</p>  |
| <p><b>consolation</b><br/>           [ˌkɒnsə'leɪʃən]<br/> <i>n.</i> 安慰<br/> <i>v.</i> console</p> | <p>I got many letters of <b>consolation</b> when my mother died.<br/>           当我母亲去世时,我收到许多慰问信。</p>   |
| <p><b>crash</b>[kræʃ]<br/> <i>n.</i> 1. 破碎声<br/>           2. 失事;坠毁</p>                           | <p>The bottle fell on the floor with a <b>crash</b>.<br/>           瓶子哗啦一声掉到地上。<br/>           He was killed in an aircraft <b>crash</b>.<br/>           他在一次飞机失事中丧生。</p> |
| <p><b>decay</b>[di'keɪ]<br/> <i>v.</i> 腐蚀<br/>           同 decline, rot</p>                       | <p>Her teeth <b>decayed</b> because she ate too many sweets.<br/>           她的牙齿因贪吃甜食而蛀坏。</p>   |

**Exercise 10.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The two roads lie at a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of 45 degrees.
2. When your teeth begin to \_\_\_\_\_, you should go to see a dentist at once.
3. Every time an American runner won a race, the crowd \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Are you \_\_\_\_\_ that you are sitting on my hat?
5. Please give me a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of everything as it happened.

**【解答】** 1. angle    2. decay    3. cheered    4. aware  
5. account

《第二部分》

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <p><b>deserve</b><br/>[dɪ'zɜ:v]<br/>v. 应受</p> | <p>If you do wrong, you <b>deserve</b> severe punishment.<br/>如果你做错事,就应受严厉的处罚。</p> |
|---|--|

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><b>distinction</b><br/>[dɪs'tɪŋkʃən]<br/>n. 区分<br/>v. distinguish</p> | <p>She treated all the children alike without <b>distinction</b>.<br/>她给孩子们同样的待遇,没有区别。</p> |
|--|--|

|                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| <p><b>echo</b>[ 'ekəʊ]<br/>v. 发回声</p> | <p>Their voice <b>echoed</b> in the big hall.<br/>他们的声音在大厅里回响着。</p> |
|---------------------------------------|---|

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <p><b>enormous</b><br/>[ɪ'no:məs]<br/>adj. 非常大的</p> | <p>The war cost an <b>enormous</b> sum of money.<br/>那场战争消耗了大量的金钱。</p> |
|---|--|

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <p><b>expose</b><br/>[iks'pəʊz]<br/>v. 1. 暴露<br/>2. 揭穿<br/>同 disclose</p>           | <p>Soldiers in an open field are <b>exposed</b> to the enemy's fire.<br/>旷野中的士兵暴露在敌人的炮火下。<br/>He threatened to <b>expose</b> the secret to the police. 他威胁要向警方揭穿秘密。</p> |
| <p><b>farewell</b><br/>['fæə'wel]<br/>n. 离别</p>                                     | <p>We shall have a <b>farewell</b> party before we leave.<br/>在我们离开前, 将有一次告别宴会。</p>   |
| <p><b>fleet</b>[flit]<br/>n. 舰队</p>   | <p>The Sixth <b>Fleet</b> in the harbor is moving toward our coast.<br/>港中的第六舰队正朝着我们的海岸航行。</p>  |
| <p><b>function</b><br/>['fʌŋkʃən]<br/>n. 功能<br/>adj. functional<br/>v. function</p> | <p>The brain performs a very important <b>function</b>; it controls the nervous system of the body.<br/>大脑执行着一项非常重要的功能; 它控制着身体的神经系统。</p>                                |
| <p><b>gradual</b><br/>['grædʒuəl]<br/>adj. 逐渐的</p>                                  | <p>A child's growth into an adult is <b>gradual</b>.<br/>儿童到成人的成长过程是逐渐的。</p>  |
| <p><b>hay</b>[heɪ]<br/>n. 干草</p>  | <p>They usually keep the <b>hay</b> in the barn.<br/>他们通常将干草存放在谷仓中。</p>   |

**Exercise 10.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The murderer was hanged; he \_\_\_\_\_ his fate.
2. He gave all his servants the same wages, without making any \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The change was \_\_\_\_\_, but now it looks completely different.
4. The hill \_\_\_\_\_ back the noise of the gun-shot.

5. During the last ten years, he has made a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ amount of money to become a millionaire.

【解答】 1. deserved 2. distinctions 3. gradual  
4. echoed 5. enormous

《第三部分》

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <p><b>ignorant</b><br/>[ 'ignərənt ]<br/><i>adj.</i> 无知的</p>  | <p>He is quite <b>ignorant</b>; he can't even read or write.<br/>他很无知;他甚至连读或写都不会。</p>                                 |
| <p><b>inquire</b><br/>[ in'kwaiə(r) ]<br/><i>v.</i> 询问<br/><i>n.</i> inquiry</p>  | <p>I <b>inquired</b> of him what he wanted.<br/>我问他要什么。</p>   |
| <p><b>item</b>[ 'aɪtəm ]<br/><i>n.</i> 项目</p>   | <p>Meat, salad and potatoes were three of the <b>items</b> on her shopping list.<br/>肉、沙拉还有马铃薯是她购物单上的三个项目。</p>        |
| <p><b>landscape</b><br/>[ 'lændskeɪp ]<br/><i>n.</i> 风景<br/> scenery, view</p> | <p>From the church tower, we can overlook the beautiful <b>landscape</b> of the valley.<br/>从教堂的塔上,我们可以俯瞰山谷美丽的景色。</p> |
| <p><b>liver</b>[ 'lɪvə(r) ]<br/><i>n.</i> 肝脏</p>  | <p>He was sent to hospital because of his bad <b>liver</b>. 他因肝病被送到医院。</p>  |
| <p><b>manuscript</b><br/>[ 'mænjʊ,skript ]<br/><i>n.</i> 原稿</p>   | <p>He sent the <b>manuscript</b> to the printer yesterday.<br/>他昨天将原稿送到印刷厂。</p>                                       |

**millionaire** | The man is a *millionaire*; he is a very rich man.  
 [ˌmɪljəˈneɪ(r)]  
*n.* 百万富翁 | 那人是个百万富翁;他是一个非常富有的人。

**murder** | The man was guilty of *murder*, he killed someone. 那人犯了谋杀罪,他杀了人。  
 [ˈmɜːdə(r)]  
*n.* 谋杀

**obey**[əˈbeɪ] | *Obey* the law, or you will be punished.  
*v.* 服从 | 服从法律,否则你将会受到惩罚。  
*n.* obedience

**organization** | The human body has a very complex *organi-*  
 [ˌɔːgənəɪˈzeɪʃən] *zation*.  
*n.* 结构 | 人体有非常复杂的结构。

**Exercise 10.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. We could see the beautiful \_\_\_\_\_ of the English Lakes through the train window.
2. An army without \_\_\_\_\_ would be useless.
3. Soldier should \_\_\_\_\_ orders immediately.
4. That \_\_\_\_\_ owns his own ship and helicopter.
5. A person who has not had much chance to learn may be \_\_\_\_\_.

【解答】 1. landscape      2. organization      3. obey  
 4. millionaire      5. ignorant

~~~~~ 《第四部分》 ~~~~~

|                                                                      |                                                                                                                            |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>parliament</b><br/>[ˈpɑ:ləmənt]<br/>n. 国会<br/>同 congress</p>   | <p><i>Parliament</i> is the lawmaking group in Great Britain.<br/>国会在英国是立法机构。</p>                                          |
| <p><b>pepper</b> [ˈpepə(r)]<br/>n. 胡椒</p>                            | <p><i>Pepper</i> is used for making food taste better.<br/>胡椒可使食物更美味。</p>                                                  |
| <p><b>poetry</b> [ˈpəʊtri]<br/>n. 诗</p>                              | <p>The teacher praised her great efforts at <i>poetry</i>. 老师称赞她肯下苦功作诗。</p>                                                |
| <p><b>preview</b><br/>[ˈpri:vju:<br/>n. 试映</p>                       | <p>Before the movie was shown to the students, there was a <i>preview</i> for the teachers.<br/>在电影放映给学生看之前,对老师先有一场试映。</p> |
| <p><b>provide</b><br/>[prəˈvaɪd]<br/>v. 供应<br/>同 supply, furnish</p> | <p>The farm <i>provided</i> them with all the food they needed.<br/>农场供应他们需要的所有食物。</p>                                     |
| <p><b>reckless</b> [ˈrekli:s]<br/>adj. 鲁莽的</p>                       | <p>Two children were killed by a <i>reckless</i> driver.<br/>两个孩子被鲁莽的司机撞死。</p>                                             |
| <p><b>repair</b> [rɪˈpeə(r)]<br/>v. 修理<br/>同 mend, fix</p>           | <p>We'd better <i>repair</i> the house before we move into it.<br/>在我们搬进去前,最好先修理一下房子。</p>                                  |
| <p><b>saint</b> [seɪnt]<br/>n. 圣人</p>                                | <p>They named their child after the <i>saint</i>.<br/>他们用圣人的名字来给他们的孩子命名。</p>                                               |
| <p><b>search</b> [sɜ:tʃ]<br/>v. 寻找</p>                               | <p>We <i>searched</i> all day for the lost cat.<br/>我们整日寻找那只走失的猫。</p>                                                      |

**sheriff** [ˈʃerɪf] | The *sheriff* brought the captured criminal before the judge.  
*n.* 警长 警长将被捕的罪犯带到法官面前。

**Exercise 10.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ in the United Kingdom is made up of the Queen, the Lords and the elected representatives of the people.
2. Shakespeare and Milton were masters of English \_\_\_\_\_.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ driving causes many automobile accidents.
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ pursued the man who robbed the bank.
5. They will \_\_\_\_\_ the school building during the summer vacation.

【解答】 1. parliament      2. poetry      3. Reckless  
 4. sheriff                  5. repair

《第五部分》

**specialist** | The patient was advised to see a heart *specialist*.  
 ['speʃəlist] *ist.*  
*n.* 专家 有人劝那病人去看一个心脏专家。

**stalk** [stɔ:k] | The hunter *stalked* the lion.  
*v.* 1. 潜近 猎人潜行接近狮子。  
 2. 大步地走 With her head in the air, she *stalked* out of the room. 她趾高气扬,大步地走出房间。  
*n.* 基;柄 The trunk of a tree and the *stalks* of corn are stems. 树干和谷茎都属于茎。  
 同 stem

**strict** [strikt] | They were very *strict* with their children.  
*adj.* 严格的 他们对孩子非常严格。

**survey** [sɜ:'veɪ] | He stood on the hill **surveyed** the surrounding country. 他站在山上,俯瞰四周的乡间。  
*v.* 俯瞰

**temper** [ˈtempə(r)] | He was in a good **temper** yesterday and smiled all day.  
*n.* 心情 他昨天心情好,整天都挂着微笑。

**tin** [tɪn] | The house over there has a **tin** roof.  
*n.* 锡 那边的那幢房子,有个锡做的屋顶。

**trim** [trɪm] | The student had his hair **trimmed**.  
*v.* 修剪 那个学生修剪了头发。  
*adj.* 整洁的 The new house has a **trim** appearance.  
 那幢新房子的外观整洁。

**venture** [ˈventʃə(r)] | If his business **venture** succeeds, he will be wealthy.  
*n.* 冒险 如果他的业务冒险成功,他将会很富有。  
*v.* 冒……之险 He **ventured** his life to save her from drowning. 他冒着生命危险救她,使她未被淹死。  
 同 risk

**wealthy** [ˈweɪθɪ] | Mr. Johnson is a very **wealthy** man.  
*adj.* 富有的 约翰逊先生是个非常富有的人。

**wrist** [rɪst] | He took the girl by the **wrist**.  
*n.* 手腕 他抓住那女孩的手腕。

**Exercise 10.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The carpenter \_\_\_\_\_ the lumber with a plane.
2. This can is made of steel protected by a coating of \_\_\_\_\_.
3. She is in bad \_\_\_\_\_ because she missed the bus and had to walk to work.

4. Dr. White is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ in diseases of the nose and throat.  
 5. The buyers \_\_\_\_\_ the goods offered for sale.

【解答】 1. trimmed    2. tin    3. temper    4. specialist  
 5. surveyed

### 效果检测

**Exercise 10.6** 找出一个与斜体词的意义最接近的单词：

1. *bold* behavior  
 (A) common    (B) brave    (C) lazy    (D) military
2. in a good *temper*  
 (A) speed    (B) stake  
 (C) disposition    (D) temperature
3. to *repair* shoes  
 (A) stretch    (B) accord    (C) mend    (D) make
4. to *inquire* something  
 (A) ask    (B) identify    (C) require    (D) protest
5. to *expose* one's secret  
 (A) forgive    (B) conceal    (C) object    (D) disclose
6. *reckless* behavior  
 (A) safe    (B) careless    (C) innocent    (D) earnest
7. a *farewell* speech  
 (A) goodbye    (B) competent  
 (C) powerful    (D) honorable
8. to get treated without *distinction* of rank  
 (A) consolation    (B) discrimination  
 (C) function    (D) disposition

9. the *decayed* teeth

(A) repaired (B) golden (C) rotten (D) shaking

10. to *applaud* the singer

(A) account (B) complain (C) accord (D) cheer

**【解答】** 1. B    2. C    3. C    4. A    5. D  
6. B    7. A    8. B    9. C    10. D

**Exercise 10.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词:

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. 专家

(A) literature (B) saint  
(C) host (D) specialist

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. 谋杀

(A) liver (B) destruction  
(C) murder (D) stalk

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. 抱怨

(A) complain (B) deteriorate  
(C) acclaim (D) furnish

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. 整洁的

(A) swift (B) trim (C) trivial (D) mild

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. 坠毁

(A) rent (B) crack (C) crash (D) stake

**【解答】** 1. D    2. C    3. A    4. B    5. C

**Exercise 10.8** 找出一个与斜体词的意义相反的单词:\_\_\_\_\_ 1. *swift*

(A) huge (B) strict (C) gradual (D) trivial

- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. *cowardly*  
 (A) average (B) miserable (C) innocent (D) bold
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. *reply*  
 (A) inquire (B) award (C) deserve (D) uncover
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. *trivial*  
 (A) reckless (B) important (C) gradual (D) wealthy
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. *illiterate*  
 (A) tiny (B) ignorant (C) learned (D) daring

**【解答】** 1. C 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. C

**Exercise 10.9** 完整拼出下列句中所欠缺的单词：

- I remember that our English teacher was very s \_\_\_\_\_ t. (严格的)
- The author's m \_\_\_\_\_ t was accepted for publication. (原稿)
- You work very hard; you d \_\_\_\_\_ e good pay. (应得)
- She broke her right w \_\_\_\_\_ t by falling on the ice. (手腕)
- A father must p \_\_\_\_\_ e food and clothes for his children. (供应)

**【解答】** 1. strict 2. manuscript 3. deserve 4. wrist  
 5. provide

**Exercise 10.10** 选出最符合句意的一个单词：

- Your presence was a \_\_\_\_\_ to me at such a sad time.  
 (A) discrimination (B) consolation  
 (C) crash (D) stalk
- The lightning was followed by a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of thunder.  
 (A) crash (B) echo (C) stake (D) trick

3. The film which has been \_\_\_\_\_ to light is no longer usable.  
(A) provided (B) decayed (C) expressed (D) exposed
4. A person who is \_\_\_\_\_ can't write his own name.  
(A) lame (B) ignorant (C) idle (D) innocent
5. The gardener \_\_\_\_\_ the dead branches from the trees.  
(A) deserved (B) protected (C) trimmed (D) repaired

**【解答】** 1. B 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. C

**Exercise 10.11** 将题前的斜体词转换为适当的词性,填入空格内:

1. *inquire* My \_\_\_\_\_ about his health was never answered.
2. *complain* The children were full of \_\_\_\_\_ about their food.
3. *obey* Soldiers act in \_\_\_\_\_ to the orders of their superior officers.
4. *distinction* The twins were so much alike that it was impossible to \_\_\_\_\_ one from the other.
5. *expose* \_\_\_\_\_ of the body to strong sunlight may be harmful.

**【解答】** 1. inquiry 2. complaints 3. obedience  
4. distinguish 5. Exposure

LESSON 11

预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. A baby *crawls* before it \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) walks                      (B) sleeps
2. A \_\_\_\_\_ for receiving or entertaining guests is called a *parlor*.  
(A) woman                      (B) room
3. *Poisonous* medicine is \_\_\_\_\_ to our body.  
(A) harmful                      (B) good
4. An *ankle* is the joint that connects the \_\_\_\_\_ and the leg.  
(A) hip                              (B) foot
5. A *bachelor* is an unmarried \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) man                              (B) woman

◆ 解 答 ◆  
1. A 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. A

《第一部分》

**accustom**

[ə'kʌstəm]

v. 习惯于

同 habituate

She could not **accustom** herself to a hot climate in Africa.

她无法习惯非洲炎热的气候。

**ankle** [ˈæŋkl]

n. 足踝

Human beings and all other animals that have feet and legs have **ankles**.

人类和其他所有有腿脚的动物都有足踝。

|                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>bachelor</b><br>[ 'bætʃələ(r) ]<br><i>n.</i> 单身汉<br> spinster                             | The young <b>bachelor</b> will soon be taking a wife.<br>那年轻的单身汉不久就会娶妻。                                              |
| <b>border</b><br>[ 'bɔ:də(r) ]<br><i>n.</i> 边<br> frontier                                   | When we went camping, we put up our tents on the <b>border</b> of the lake.<br>露营时,我们在湖边扎营。                          |
| <b>calm</b> [kɑ:m]<br><i>adj.</i> 沉着的                                                                                                                                         | Mother's <b>calm</b> behavior made the frightened child quiet.<br>母亲沉着的态度使那受惊的孩子安静了下来。                               |
| <b>chew</b> [tʃu:]<br><i>v.</i> 咀嚼                                                                                                                                            | You should <b>chew</b> your food well before you swallow it.<br>你应该先细嚼食物后,再咽下去。                                      |
| <b>complex</b><br>[ 'kɒmpleks ]<br><i>adj.</i> 复杂的<br> complicated<br><i>n.</i> complexity | The instructions for building the radio were so <b>complex</b> that we could not follow them.<br>组装收音机的说明太复杂了,我们看不懂。 |
| <b>consolidate</b><br>[ kən'sɒlɪdeɪt ]<br><i>n.</i> 巩固<br> solidify                        | Britain is trying to <b>consolidate</b> her position in the North Atlantic.<br>英国试图巩固她在北大西洋的地位。                      |
| <b>crawl</b> [krɔ:l]<br><i>v.</i> 爬<br> creep                                              | The wounded soldier tried to <b>crawl</b> back to the tent.<br>那伤兵试图爬回帐篷。                                            |

**decent** ['di:sənt] | You need **decent** clothes when you go to church.  
*adj.* 体面的; 不差的; 正当的 | 你去教堂时要穿体面的衣服。

**Exercise 11.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. You can get quite a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ meal there without spending too much money.
2. The presidential candidate \_\_\_\_\_ his reputation by winning several primary elections.
3. He \_\_\_\_\_ a mouthful of meat but it was too much to swallow.
4. The Rio Grande River is the \_\_\_\_\_ between the United States and Mexico.
5. Hunting dogs are \_\_\_\_\_ to the noise of a gun.

【解答】 1. decent      2. consolidated      3. chewed  
 4. border      5. accustomed

《第二部分》

**despair** [dis'peə(r)] | A feeling of **despair** came over him as the boat sank deeper in the water.  
*n.* 绝望 | 当船在水中沉得更深时,他感到绝望了。  
 hope  
 desperation

**distress** [dis'tres] | Her husband has just died and she is in great **distress**.  
*n.* 悲痛 | 她的丈夫刚死,所以她非常悲痛。  
 worry  
 comfort, relief

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>edge</b>[edʒ]<br/> <i>n.</i> 边缘<br/>  margin, border<br/>  center</p> | <p>Don't put the glass on the <b>edge</b> of the table; it may get knocked off.<br/>         不要将杯子放在桌边;它可能会被打落。</p> |
| <p><b>enterprise</b><br/>         ['entəpraɪz]<br/> <i>n.</i> 企业<br/>  business</p>                                                                          | <p>A steel manufacturing company is a great <b>enterprise</b>.<br/>         钢铁厂是个大企业。</p>                           |
| <p><b>export</b>['eksɒ:t]<br/> <i>n.</i> 输出<br/>  import</p>                                                                                                 | <p>Last year our <b>exports</b> exceeded our imports in value.<br/>         去年我们的出口货物在价值上超过进口的。</p>                 |
| <p><b>fasten</b><br/>         ['fɑ:sən, 'fæsən]<br/> <i>v.</i> 固定</p>                                                                                                                                                                         | <p>He <b>fastened</b> the pages together with a pin.<br/>         他用大头针将文件钉在一起。</p>                                 |
| <p><b>flesh</b>[fleʃ]<br/> <i>n.</i> 肉</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <p>A fat man has much more <b>flesh</b> than a thin man.<br/>         胖子身上的肉比瘦子的要多得多。</p>                           |
| <p><b>fund</b>[fʌnd]<br/> <i>n.</i> 基金<br/>  capital</p>                                                                                                   | <p>That <b>fund</b> will be used for the expenses of the poor people.<br/>         那份基金将用来作为穷人的津贴。</p>              |
| <p><b>graduate</b><br/>         ['grædʒuərt]<br/> <i>v.</i> 毕业<br/> <i>n.</i> graduation</p>                                                                                                                                                  | <p>Her brother <b>graduated</b> from Harvard University last year.<br/>         她兄弟去年于哈佛大学毕业。</p>                   |
| <p><b>heal</b>[hi:l]<br/> <i>v.</i> 治愈<br/>  cure</p>                                                                                                      | <p>The medicine and rest will soon <b>heal</b> your wound.<br/>         药物和休息很快就能让你的伤口痊愈。</p>                       |

*Exercise 11.2* 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. He was filled with \_\_\_\_\_ as his enemies crowded around him.
2. The high cost of living is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ to most people.
3. Ship-building is one of the biggest \_\_\_\_\_ in this country.
4. Wood is one of the chief \_\_\_\_\_ of Australia.
5. The sharp knife cut into the \_\_\_\_\_ of his arm.

【解答】 1. despair    2. distress    3. enterprises  
4. exports    5. flesh

《第三部分》

|                                                                         |                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>illustrate</b><br/>['ɪləstreɪt]<br/>v. 说明<br/>n. illustration</p> | <p>The teacher compared the heart to a pump to <b>illustrate</b> its function.<br/>老师将心脏比喻成泵,以说明心脏的功能。</p> |
| <p><b>insist</b>[ɪn'sɪst]<br/>v. 坚持</p>                                 | <p>She <b>insisted</b> that she was right.<br/>她坚持她是对的。</p>                                                |
| <p><b>jar</b>[dʒɑ:(r)]<br/>n. 广口瓶</p>                                   | <p>A <b>jar</b> has a wide mouth and sometimes has two handles.<br/>广口瓶有个大口,有时候还有两个把手。</p>                 |
| <p><b>lane</b>[leɪn]<br/>n. 巷<br/>同 passage</p>                         | <p>He was driving his car down the narrow <b>lane</b> in the town.<br/>他正沿着城中的窄巷开车。</p>                    |
| <p><b>loan</b>[ləʊn]<br/>n. 贷款</p>                                      | <p>He asked his brother for a small <b>loan</b> to buy a house.<br/>他向他兄弟借一点钱买房子。</p>                      |

|                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>maple</b> [ 'meɪpl ]<br>n. 枫树                                              | We have a <b>maple</b> in our yard.<br>我们院内有棵枫树。                                                                                                |
| <b>mingle</b> [ 'mɪŋgl ]<br>v. 交往<br>同 mix, blend                             | It is not easy for him to <b>mingle</b> with people because he is very shy. 由于他非常害羞, 因此和人交往, 对他来说不是件容易的事。                                       |
| <b>muscle</b> [ 'mʌsl ]<br>n. 肌肉                                              | You can develop your arm <b>muscles</b> by playing tennis.<br>你可以通过打网球使臂肌发达。                                                                    |
| <b>object</b> [ 'ɒbdʒɪkt ]<br>n. 物体<br>[ əb 'dʒekt ]<br>v. 反对<br>n. objection | A dark <b>object</b> moved between me and the door.<br>一个黑色物体在我和门之间移动着。<br>He stood up and <b>objected</b> in strong language.<br>他站起来以激烈的言辞反对。 |
| <b>origin</b> [ 'ɔrɪdʒɪn ]<br>n. 起源<br>同 source                               | Ancient Greece is often called the <b>origin</b> of Western civilization.<br>古希腊常被称为西方文明的发源地。                                                   |

**Exercise 11.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

- I \_\_\_\_\_ to being treated like a child.
- He injured the \_\_\_\_\_ of his arm by throwing the heavy weight.
- The king often left his palace at night and \_\_\_\_\_ with the unknown people in the streets.
- He asked me for a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of five hundred dollars.
- The \_\_\_\_\_ of this river is a stream in the mountains.

**【解答】** 1. object 2. muscles 3. mingled 4. loan  
5. origin

《第四部分》

|                                                                          |                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>parlor</b> ['pɑ:lə(r)]<br/>n. 客厅</p>                               | <p>The <i>parlor</i> was crowded with many people during the party.<br/>在宴会上,客厅挤满了许多人。</p>           |
| <p><b>perceive</b><br/>[pə'si:v]<br/>v. 察觉<br/>n. perception</p>         | <p>I soon <i>perceived</i> that I could not change his mind.<br/>我很快就发觉我不能使他改变想法。</p>                |
| <p><b>poisonous</b><br/>['pɔɪznəs]<br/>adj. 有毒的<br/>n. poison</p>        | <p>Some plants have <i>poisonous</i> roots or fruits.<br/>有些植物的根或果实有毒。</p>                           |
| <p><b>previous</b><br/>['pri:vjəs]<br/>adj. 先前的</p>                      | <p>I can't go, for I have a <i>previous</i> engagement.<br/>我不能去,因为我有约在先。</p>                        |
| <p><b>province</b><br/>['prɒvɪns]<br/>n. 省</p>                           | <p>Most countries are divided into several <i>provinces</i>.<br/>大多数国家被分成好几个省。</p>                   |
| <p><b>recommend</b><br/>[ˌrekə'mend]<br/>v. 劝告<br/>n. recommendation</p> | <p>The doctor <i>recommended</i> that she should stay in bed for a week.<br/>医生劝她应该在床上躺一星期。</p>      |
| <p><b>replace</b><br/>[rɪ'pleɪs]<br/>v. 代替<br/>n. replacement</p>        | <p>Most telephone operators have been <i>replaced</i> by dial telephones.<br/>大多数的电话接线员已被自动电话取代。</p> |

|                                                                  |                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>ridiculous</b><br/>[ri'dɪkjʊləs]<br/>adj. 荒谬的;<br/>可笑的</p> | <p>It would be <i>ridiculous</i> to speak ill of one's parents in public.<br/>公开说自己父母的坏话是荒谬的。</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                                                                                  |                                                               |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>shift</b>[ʃɪft]<br/>v. 转移<br/> change</p> | <p>The wind <i>shifted</i> from east to west.<br/>风向由东转西。</p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>slip</b>[slɪp]<br/>v. 滑倒<br/> slide<br/>n. 纸片</p> | <p>She <i>slipped</i> on the ice and hurt her hand.<br/>她在冰上摔倒伤了手。<br/>He inserted a <i>slip</i> marking his place in the book. 他在书中插入纸片,以标明他读到的地方。</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**Exercise 11.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ on the icy road and broke his leg.
2. You look very \_\_\_\_\_ in that old hat.
3. His former employer \_\_\_\_\_ Miss Kim as a good typist.
4. Have you had any \_\_\_\_\_ experience, or is this kind of work new to you?
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ of their house is nicely decorated.

|             |             |               |                |
|-------------|-------------|---------------|----------------|
| <b>【解答】</b> | 1. slipped  | 2. ridiculous | 3. recommended |
|             | 4. previous | 5. parlor     |                |

《第五部分》

|                                                                 |                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>sphere</b>[sfɪə(r)]<br/>n. 球</p>                          | <p>All points on the surface of a <b>sphere</b> are equally distant from the center.<br/>球心到球面上任何一点的距离都一样。</p>                   |
| <p><b>startle</b>['stɑ:tɪl]<br/>v. 使吃惊</p>                      | <p>I was <b>startled</b> at the news of his death.<br/>他去世的消息让我大吃一惊。</p>                                                         |
| <p><b>stroke</b>[strəʊk]<br/>n. 钟鸣声</p>                         | <p>The <b>strokes</b> of the church bell awakened us.<br/>教堂的钟声敲醒了我们。</p>                                                        |
| <p><b>suspicion</b><br/>[səs'pɪʃən]<br/>n. 嫌疑</p>               | <p>The young man is under <b>suspicion</b> of murder.<br/>那年轻人有谋杀的嫌疑。</p>                                                        |
| <p><b>temple</b>['tempɪl]<br/>n. 1. 寺庙<br/>2. 太阳穴</p>           | <p>The people went to the <b>temple</b> to pray.<br/>人们到寺庙里祈祷。<br/>He had a cut on his right <b>temple</b>.<br/>他右边太阳穴上有道伤痕。</p> |
| <p><b>toad</b>[təʊd]<br/>n. 蟾蜍</p>                              | <p><b>Toads</b> have shorter legs and are generally clumsier than frogs.<br/>蟾蜍的腿比青蛙的短,而且通常比青蛙丑。</p>                             |
| <p><b>troublesome</b><br/>['trʌblsəm]<br/>adj. 讨厌的;<br/>麻烦的</p> | <p>He is the most <b>troublesome</b> person in our class.<br/>他是我们班上最讨厌的人。</p>                                                   |

|                       |                                                                                        |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>vessel</b> ['vesl] | Empty <b>vessels</b> make the most sound.                                              |
| n. 1. 容器              | 空容器最响。(满瓶不响,半瓶响丁当。)                                                                    |
| 2. 血管                 | The mark on her skin was caused by broken blood <b>vessels</b> .<br>她皮肤上的伤疤是因血管破裂所造成的。 |
| 3. 船只<br>同 ship, boat | The port of London is filled with <b>vessels</b> of all kinds. 伦敦港口停满了各式各样的船只。         |

|                  |                                                       |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>web</b> [web] | A spider captures small insects with its <b>web</b> . |
| n. 网             | 蜘蛛用网捕捉小昆虫。                                            |

|                   |                                                                              |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>yell</b> [jel] | His <b>yell</b> of anger could be heard in the next room.                    |
| n. 喊叫             | 隔壁房间都听得见他生气的叫喊声。                                                             |
| 同 shout           |                                                                              |
| v. 呼喊             | During the game the students often <b>yelled</b> with cheers. 比赛中,学生们经常大声欢呼。 |

**Exercise 11.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Bowls and cups were among the ancient \_\_\_\_\_ they found.
2. She was \_\_\_\_\_ to see him looking so ill.
3. She can't swim yet, but has made a few \_\_\_\_\_ with her arms.
4. The real thief tried to turn \_\_\_\_\_ toward others.
5. Ancient Greek \_\_\_\_\_ were beautifully built.

**【解答】** 1. vessels      2. startled      3. strokes  
4. suspicion      5. temples

## 效果检测

**Exercise 11.6** 找出一个与其他三个不相关的词：

1. (A) surprise (B) frighten (C) flee (D) startle
2. (A) province (B) margin (C) edge (D) border
3. (A) ridiculous (B) absurd  
(C) silly (D) reckless
4. (A) blend (B) replace (C) mingle (D) mix
5. (A) vessel (B) ship (C) boat (D) cabin
6. (A) accustom (B) consolidate  
(C) habituate (D) familiarize
7. (A) margin (B) source  
(C) beginning (D) origin

**【解答】** 1. C 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. D 6. B 7. A

**Exercise 11.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. 嫌疑  
(A) disposition (B) suspicion  
(C) venture (D) province
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. 毕业  
(A) graduate (B) illuminate  
(C) perceive (D) shift
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. 爬  
(A) heal (B) slip (C) stalk (D) crawl
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. 咀嚼  
(A) shift (B) slip (C) chew (D) creep
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. 坚持

(A) perceive

(B) insist

(C) object

(D) consolidate

**【解答】** 1. B    2. A    3. D    4. C    5. B

**Exercise 11.8** 找出一个与斜体词的意义相反的单词:

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. *loosen*

(A) enrich    (B) fasten    (C) fold    (D) untie

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. *relief*

(A) suspicion    (B) border    (C) operation    (D) distress

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. *import*

(A) edge    (B) object    (C) export    (D) report

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. *silly*

(A) wise    (B) calm    (C) troublesome    (D) careless

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. *edge*

(A) margin    (B) center    (C) sphere    (D) temple

**【解答】** 1. B    2. D    3. C    4. A    5. B

**Exercise 11.9** 完整拼出下列句中所欠缺的单词:

1. I tell you that d \_\_\_\_\_ t people just don't do things like that. (正当的)
2. Some people believe in private e \_\_\_\_\_ e, while others believe in government ownership of industry. (企业)
3. His political ideas were too c \_\_\_\_\_ x to get support from ordinary people. (复杂的)
4. A good traveler can a \_\_\_\_\_ m himself to almost any kind of food. (习惯于)



of soldiers.

- (A) edge (B) passage  
(C) loan (D) sphere

\_\_\_\_\_ 9. Part of the school sports *fund* will be used to improve the condition of the football field.

- (A) capital (B) loan  
(C) ground (D) equipment

\_\_\_\_\_ 10. The failure of the rice harvest will cause great *distress* among the farmers.

- (A) worry (B) debt  
(C) yell (D) damage

**【解答】** 1. A    2. D    3. C    4. B    5. B  
6. D    7. A    8. B    9. A    10. A

LESSON 12

预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. Many museums have collections of *priceless* Paintings by \_\_\_\_\_ artists.  
(A) famous            (B) poor
2. There wasn't enough \_\_\_\_\_ to *float* the wood.  
(A) water            (B) fire
3. Those \_\_\_\_\_ over there are not *edible*.  
(A) books            (B) fruits
4. He was *jealous* of his neighbor's \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) failure            (B) success
5. His long speech *bored* me so that I heard all his stories with \_\_\_\_\_ interest.  
(A) little            (B) great

◆ 解 答 ◆

1. A 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A

《第一部分》

**ache**[eɪk]

*n.* 疼痛

☐ pain

The boy is trying to forget the **ache** in his back.

那男孩试图忘掉背部的疼痛。

|                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>apparent</b><br/>[ə'pærənt]<br/><i>adj.</i> 明显的<br/> obvious</p>      | <p>It is <b>apparent</b> that you dislike your job.<br/>显然你不喜欢你的工作。</p>                                  |
| <p><b>barn</b>[ba:n]<br/><i>n.</i> 谷仓</p>                                                                                                                    | <p>A farmer keeps his crops in the <b>barn</b>.<br/>农民将谷物收藏在谷仓中。</p>                                     |
| <p><b>bore</b>[bɔ:(r)]<br/><i>v.</i> 使人厌烦<br/><i>n.</i> boredom</p>                                                                                          | <p>The man <b>bores</b> me; I've heard all his stories before. 那男人使我厌烦;我早就听说过他所有的故事了。</p>                |
| <p><b>canal</b>[kə'næl]<br/><i>n.</i> 运河</p>                                                                                                                 | <p><b>Canals</b> have been built to take water to the desert. 修建运河是用来将水运送到沙漠。</p>                        |
| <p><b>chilly</b>['tʃɪli]<br/><i>adj.</i> 寒冷的<br/><i>n.</i> chill</p>                                                                                         | <p>You will feel <b>chilly</b> if you don't wear a coat in a cold day.<br/>如果你在冷天不穿上外套,将会感觉寒冷。</p>       |
| <p><b>compose</b><br/>[kəm'pəuz]<br/><i>v.</i> 组成<br/><i>n.</i> composition</p>                                                                              | <p>The chemistry teacher asked the students what water is <b>composed</b> of.<br/>化学老师问学生,水是由什么组成的。</p>  |
| <p><b>constant</b><br/>['kɒnstənt]<br/><i>adj.</i> 不断的<br/> continual</p> | <p>He was tired of his wife's <b>constant</b> complaint.<br/>他厌倦他太太不停地抱怨。</p>                            |
| <p><b>create</b><br/>[kri:'eɪt]<br/><i>v.</i> 创造<br/><i>n.</i> creation</p>                                                                                  | <p>The <i>Bible</i> said that God <b>created</b> this world in seven days.<br/>《圣经》上说,上帝在七天内创造了这个世界。</p> |

|                 |                                                       |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>decisive</b> | Our air force was <i>decisive</i> in winning the war. |
| [di'saisiv]     | 我们的空军确定能赢得这场战役。                                       |
| adj. 确定的        |                                                       |
| v. decide       |                                                       |

**Exercise 12.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Crops and food for animals are usually stored in the \_\_\_\_\_.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ are used for ships or for carrying water to places that need it.
3. I hope you are not getting \_\_\_\_\_ listening to me.
4. The king was given a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ welcome when he arrived on the island.
5. Three days of \_\_\_\_\_ rain made the river overflow its bank.

**【解答】** 1. barn    2. Canals    3. bored    4. chilly  
5. constant

《第二部分》

|                  |                                                                      |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>desperate</b> | The prisoners became <i>desperate</i> in their attempts to get free. |
| ['despəɾət]      |                                                                      |
| adj. 1. 绝望的      | 囚犯对企图逃脱一事不再抱希望。                                                      |
| 2. 自暴自弃的         | She became so <i>desperate</i> that we feared for her sanity.        |
| 同 hopeless       | 她变得如此自暴自弃,使我们担心她的神智。                                                 |

|                 |                                                                         |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>district</b> | The farming <i>district</i> of the United States is in the Middle West. |
| ['distrikt]     |                                                                         |
| n. 区域           | 美国的农业区在中西部。                                                             |
| 同 region, area  |                                                                         |

|                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>edible</b> [ˈedɪbl]<br><i>adj.</i> 可食的                                                                                                      | This apple is rotten and no longer <i>edible</i> .<br>这个苹果已经腐烂,不能再吃了。                                               |
| <b>entertain</b><br>[ˌentəˈteɪn]<br><i>v.</i> 娱乐<br><i>n.</i> entertainment                                                                    | The circus <i>entertained</i> the children.<br>马戏团娱乐了孩子们。                                                           |
| <b>explore</b><br>[ɪksˈplɔː(r)]<br><i>v.</i> 探险<br> search    | Columbus discovered America but did not <i>explore</i> the new continent.<br>哥伦布发现了美洲,可是并没有到那块新大陆上去探险。              |
| <b>fate</b> [feɪt]<br><i>n.</i> 命运;天命                                                                                                          | It was their <i>fate</i> to meet and marry.<br>他们的相识和结合是天意。                                                         |
| <b>float</b> [fləʊt]<br><i>v.</i> 飘浮                                                                                                           | Wood <i>floats</i> on water and dust <i>floats</i> in the air.<br>木头浮于水上,灰尘则飘于空中。                                   |
| <b>fundamental</b><br>[ˌfʌndəˈmentəl]<br><i>adj.</i> 基本的                                                                                       | There's a <i>fundamental</i> difference between the two ministers.<br>这两个部长之间有本质的不同。                                |
| <b>grand</b> [grænd]<br><i>adj.</i> 壮伟的<br> magnificent     | The <i>grand</i> sight of the Niagara Falls cannot be forgotten for a long time.<br>尼亚加拉瀑布的壮观景象深入人心。                |
| <b>healthy</b><br>[ˈheɪθɪ]<br><i>adj.</i> 健康的<br> wholesome | The children are quite <i>healthy</i> although they all have slight colds at the moment.<br>孩子们此时虽然都有轻微的感冒,可是仍相当健康。 |

**Exercise 12.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. There is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ difference between your proposal and mine.
2. The boat was \_\_\_\_\_ down the river when I saw it.
3. Many people blame \_\_\_\_\_ for their failure in life.
4. Can you distinguish the \_\_\_\_\_ and the poisonous mushrooms?
5. His failure made him \_\_\_\_\_ and he resolved to succeed next time or die in the attempt.

**【解答】** 1. fundamental    2. floating    3. fate  
4. edible    5. desperate

《第三部分》

|                                                                      |                                                                                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>imagine</b><br/>[ɪ'mædʒɪn]<br/>v. 想像<br/>n. imagination</p>    | <p>I can <i>imagine</i> the scene clearly in my mind.<br/>我能在脑中清晰地想像出那情景。</p>                           |
| <p><b>inspire</b><br/>[ɪn'spaɪə(r)]<br/>v. 激励<br/>n. inspiration</p> | <p>His brother's success <i>inspired</i> the boy to work harder.<br/>他兄弟的成功激励了那男孩更加努力地工作。</p>           |
| <p><b>jealous</b> [ˈdʒeləs]<br/>adj. 嫉妒的<br/>n. jealousy</p>         | <p>He was very <i>jealous</i> when he discovered that she loved someone else.<br/>当他发现她爱上别人时,非常嫉妒。</p>  |
| <p><b>lantern</b><br/>['læntən]<br/>n. 灯笼</p>                        | <p>My wife bought a beautiful Chinese <i>lantern</i> for the living room.<br/>我妻子买了一个漂亮的中国式灯笼来装饰客厅。</p> |

|                                                                          |                                                                                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>local</b> ['ləʊkəl]<br><i>adj.</i> 地方的;<br>当地的<br>同 provincial        | We have a small <b>local</b> broadcasting station in our town.<br>我们镇上有个小规模的地方广播电台。                                   |
| <b>marble</b> ['mɑ:bl]<br><i>n.</i> 大理石                                  | He was buried in a <b>marble</b> tomb.<br>他被葬在大理石的坟墓里。                                                                |
| <b>minor</b> ['maɪnə(r)]<br><i>adj.</i> 次要的<br><i>n.</i> minority        | The young actress was given a <b>minor</b> part in the new play.<br>那年轻的女演员在新剧中被指定出演一个配角。                             |
| <b>mutual</b><br>['mjʊ:tʃʊəl]<br><i>adj.</i> 共同的<br>同 reciprocal         | We were happy to have him as our <b>mutual</b> friend.<br>我们很高兴让他成为我们共同的朋友。                                           |
| <b>objective</b><br>[ɒb'dʒektɪv]<br><i>n.</i> 目的<br>同 goal, aim          | She always wanted to own her own house, and now she had obtained her <b>objective</b> .<br>她总是想拥有一栋属于自己的房子,现在她已达到目的了。 |
| <b>ornament</b><br>['ɔ:nəmənt]<br><i>n.</i> 装饰<br><i>adj.</i> ornamental | There were carved <b>ornaments</b> on the cabinet door.<br>橱柜门上有雕刻的装饰。                                                |

**Exercise 12.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. When my little brother sees mother holding the new baby, he becomes \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The front of the building was covered with \_\_\_\_\_.
3. He left most of his money to his son; his daughter received only a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ part of his wealth.

4. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ life without gas, electricity, radio and other modern conveniences?
5. We must bring a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ to stay overnight in the mountain.

【解答】 1. jealous 2. marble 3. minor 4. imagine  
5. lantern

《第四部分》

|                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>partial</b><br/>[ˈpɑːʃəl]<br/>adj. 1. 一部分的<br/>2. 偏袒的<br/>同 biased<br/>反 fair</p> | <p>The play was only a <b>partial</b> success.<br/>那出戏只部分成功。<br/>A parent should not be <b>partial</b> to any one of his children.<br/>做父母的不应该偏袒任何一个孩子。</p>         |
| <p><b>perform</b><br/>[pəˈfɔːm]<br/>v. 1. 做; 执行<br/>2. 演(戏)</p>                         | <p>He always <b>performs</b> his work with great care.<br/>他一向很谨慎地执行工作。<br/>What kind of play will be <b>performed</b> in the theater tonight?<br/>今晚戏院将演出什么戏剧?</p> |
| <p><b>priceless</b><br/>[ˈpraɪslɪs]<br/>adj. 贵重的</p>                                    | <p>Only a very rich man could afford to buy these <b>priceless</b> paintings.<br/>只有非常有钱的人才买得起这些贵重的画。</p>                                                           |
| <p><b>publish</b><br/>[ˈpʌblɪʃ]<br/>v. 发表; 出版<br/>n. publication</p>                    | <p>It is a good story, but we can't <b>publish</b> it; it would offend too many people.<br/>这是一个好故事, 可是我们不能发表, 因为它会冒犯许多人。</p>                                       |

|                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>recognize</b><br/>[ˈrekəɡnaɪz]<br/>v. 认出<br/>n. recognition</p>                                                              | <p>Honesty and sincerity in students are easily <b>recognized</b> by teachers.<br/>老师很容易就看出学生的诚实和真挚。</p>                                                      |
| <p><b>repeat</b>[rɪˈpi:t]<br/>v. 重做</p>                                                                                            | <p>If you <b>repeat</b> that mistake, you will be punished. 如果你再犯那个错误, 将会受罚。</p>                                                                              |
| <p><b>reward</b><br/>[rɪˈwɔ:d]<br/>n. 报答</p>                                                                                       | <p>As a <b>reward</b> for his bravery, the soldier was given a gold medal.<br/>为了表彰他的勇敢, 这个士兵被授予一块金牌。</p>                                                     |
| <p><b>sake</b>[seɪk]<br/>n. 缘故<br/> benefit</p> | <p>If you won't do it for your own <b>sake</b>, then do it for my <b>sake</b>. 如果你不是为了自己做这件事, 那么就算是为我吧。</p>                                                   |
| <p><b>secret</b>[ˈsi:krit]<br/>adj. 秘密的<br/>n. 奥秘</p>                                                                              | <p>He kept some money in a <b>secret</b> place.<br/>他将一些钱存放在一个隐密的地方。<br/>The old man had learned many of the <b>secrets</b> of nature.<br/>那老人知道许多大自然的奥秘。</p> |

**Exercise 12.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. These plans must be kept \_\_\_\_\_ from the enemy.
2. He fought the war for the \_\_\_\_\_ of his country's freedom.
3. To buy books for your children is a \_\_\_\_\_ investment for them.
4. He received a title as a \_\_\_\_\_ for his services.

**【解答】** 1. secret 2. sake 3. priceless 4. reward

《第五部分》

**shield**[ʃi:ld]  
*n.* 盾  
 ☒ spear  
*v.* 遮护  
 ☐ protect

The **shield** protected him from the blows of his enemy.  
 这面盾保护他免受敌人的打击。  
 Her wide hat **shielded** her eyes from the sun.  
 宽帽遮护她的眼睛以防日射。

**slight**[slait]  
*adj.* 轻微的

He stayed home for a day because of a **slight** illness.  
 他因为小病,留在家里一天。

**spell**[spel]  
*n.* 1. 符咒  
 ☐ enchantment  
 2. 一段时间

The poor little girl was under the **spell** of the witch.  
 孤苦无助的小女孩中了女巫的妖术。  
 We had a long **spell** of hot weather last summer. 去年夏天有一段很长的热天。

**stare**[steə(r)]  
*v.* 注视  
 ☐ gaze

The little girl **stared** at the strange man at the store.  
 小女孩在商店里注视着那个陌生人。

**string**[striŋ]  
*n.* 绳  
 ☐ thread, cord

The package was tied with red **strings**.  
 那个包裹用红绳绑着。

**suspect**  
 [səs'pekt]  
*v.* 觉察

The mouse **suspected** danger and didn't touch the trap.  
 老鼠觉察到了危险,没有碰那捕捉机。

[ 'sʌspekt]  
*n.* 嫌疑犯

The police have arrested two **suspects** in connection with the bank robbery.  
 警方逮捕了两名与银行抢劫有关的嫌疑犯。

|                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>temperature</b><br/>[ 'tempərətʃə(r) ]<br/>n. 温度</p>        | <p>What's the average <i>temperature</i> in Beijing on a summer day?<br/>北京夏天的平均温度是多少?</p>                                                                       |
| <p><b>tissue</b><br/>[ 'tɪʃju:, 'tɪsju: ]<br/>n. 组织</p>           | <p>The teacher showed pictures of muscle <i>tissues</i> and brain tissues.<br/>老师展示肌肉组织和脑部组织的图片。</p>                                                             |
| <p><b>troop</b>[ tru:p ]<br/>n. 1. 群;组<br/>2. 军队<br/>同 forces</p> | <p>A <i>troop</i> of children gathered around the teacher.<br/>一群孩子聚集在老师四周。<br/>The soldiers are preparing to attack enemy <i>troops</i>. 士兵们正准备进攻敌军。</p>        |
| <p><b>verse</b>[ vɜ:s ]<br/>n. 诗;韵文</p>                           | <p>A collection of his <i>verse</i> has just been published.<br/>他的一套诗集刚出版。</p>                                                                                  |
| <p><b>weary</b>[ 'wiəri ]<br/>adj. 疲倦的<br/>v. 使厌烦</p>             | <p>He felt <i>weary</i> after playing tennis for two hours.<br/>打了两个小时的网球后,他感到疲倦。<br/>The boy <i>wearies</i> me with constant questions.<br/>那男孩不断地问问题,使我厌烦。</p> |

**Exercise 12.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. We were under the \_\_\_\_\_ of the beautiful music.
2. He got a \_\_\_\_\_ wound on his back but is all right now.
3. She often wears a \_\_\_\_\_ of pearls around her neck.
4. The nurse took the \_\_\_\_\_ of the patient—it was 38.5°C.
5. The long hours of work have \_\_\_\_\_ me a lot.

【解答】 1. spell 2. slight 3. string 4. temperature  
5. wearied

### 效果检测

**Exercise 12.6** 找出一个与斜体词的意义最接近的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. *weary* in mind and body  
(A) healthy (B) sound (C) tired (D) warm
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. to cast a *spell* over someone  
(A) marble (B) enchantment  
(C) stroke (D) spear
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. to *stare* at someone  
(A) gaze (B) yell (C) inspire (D) surmise
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. *constant* practice  
(A) apparent (B) hard (C) decisive (D) unceasing
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. *desperate* attempts  
(A) careless (B) decisive  
(C) hopeless (D) fundamental
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. *edible* fish  
(A) trivial (B) audible (C) eatable (D) tiny
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. to *entertain* someone  
(A) amuse (B) frighten (C) encourage (D) suspect
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. to *explore* an unknown world  
(A) destroy (B) search (C) perceive (D) inquire
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. wonderful *ornament*  
(A) decoration (B) enchantment  
(C) string (D) organization

- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. living in a *grand* style  
 (A) splendid (B) huge (C) gradual (D) miserable

**【解答】** 1. C    2. B    3. A    4. D    5. C  
 6. C    7. A    8. B    9. A    10. A

**Exercise 12.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. 绝望的  
 (A) desperate (B) sake  
 (C) saint (D) marble
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. 嫉妒的  
 (A) wholesome (B) obvious  
 (C) conclusive (D) jealous
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. 大理石  
 (A) tissue (B) canal (C) marble (D) tin
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. 目的  
 (A) operation (B) objective  
 (C) item (D) protection
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. 报答  
 (A) reward (B) verse (C) benefit (D) spear

**【解答】** 1. A    2. D    3. C    4. B    5. A

**Exercise 12.8** 找出一个与斜体词的意义相反的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. *insignificant*  
 (A) slight (B) vigorous  
 (C) trivial (D) important

- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. *biased*  
 (A) reciprocal (B) partial  
 (C) fair (D) wholesome
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. *verse*  
 (A) tired (B) prose (C) plain (D) chilly
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. *apparent*  
 (A) unclear (B) constant (C) calm (D) local
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. *sink*  
 (A) wholesome (B) float  
 (C) healthy (D) partial

**【解答】** 1. D 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. B

**Exercise 12.9** 完整拼出下列句中所欠缺的单词：

1. Doctors should p \_\_\_\_\_ m their operations with great care. (执行)
2. P \_\_\_\_\_ h your shoes with a brush. (擦亮)
3. Dogs r \_\_\_\_\_ e people by their smell. (认出)
4. The continuous a \_\_\_\_\_ e in his head worried him. (疼痛)
5. It is a \_\_\_\_\_ t that the days become longer in June and July. (明显的)

**【解答】** 1. perform 2. Polish 3. recognize 4. ache  
 5. apparent

**Exercise 12.10** 选出最符合句意的一个单词：

1. It is not polite to \_\_\_\_\_ at other people.  
 (A) nod (B) stare (C) look (D) inspire

2. You have to present a \_\_\_\_\_ evidence in the court.  
(A) decisive (B) weary (C) silly (D) decent
3. We were all anxious about the \_\_\_\_\_ of the missing fisherman.  
(A) secret (B) ache (C) fate (D) reward
4. He has a \_\_\_\_\_ appearance even though he is not well.  
(A) weary (B) apparent  
(C) grand (D) wholesome
5. A family has \_\_\_\_\_ affection when each person likes the others and is liked by them.  
(A) mutual (B) provincial (C) slight (D) desperate

**【解答】** 1. B 2. A 3. C 4. D 5. A

**Exercise 12.11** 将题前的斜体词转换为适当的词性,填入空格内:

1. *bore* The patient spent long days of \_\_\_\_\_ in the hospital.
2. *entertain* The city offers all kinds of \_\_\_\_\_ for young and old.
3. *repeat* The play was a \_\_\_\_\_ of a theme used twenty years ago.
4. *minor* The nation wants peace; only a \_\_\_\_\_ want the war to continue.
5. *chilly* There is a \_\_\_\_\_ in the air this morning.

**【解答】** 1. boredom 2. entertainment 3. repetition  
4. minority 5. chill

LESSON 13

预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. The boy *smashed* the window with \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) a piece of cloth      (B) a stone
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ caused a serious *flood*.  
 (A) heavy rains      (B) desperate battles
3. There were some people standing on the *deck* of the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) house      (B) ship
4. She gave her son some \_\_\_\_\_ for the *purchase* of his school books.  
 (A) money      (B) time
5. Being a \_\_\_\_\_ is a *perilous* profession.  
 (A) businessman      (B) fireman

◆ 解 答 ◆

1. B 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. B

《第一部分》

|                                     |                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>achieve</b><br/>[ə'tʃi:v]</p> | <p>The soldiers fought bravely and finally <b>achieved</b> victory.</p> |
| <p>v. 获得</p>                        | <p>士兵们勇敢作战, 终于获得胜利。</p>                                                 |

|                                                         |                                                                                                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>appreciate</b><br/>[ə'pri:ʃieɪt]<br/>v. 1. 欣赏</p> | <p>You can't <b>appreciate</b> English poetry unless you have a good knowledge of how English is spoken.</p>  |
| <p>2. 感激</p>                                            | <p>除非你精通英文, 否则无法欣赏英文诗。<br/>Thank you very much for your help; I <b>appreciate</b> it.<br/>非常感谢你的帮助, 我很感激。</p> |
| <p><b>basis</b> ['beɪsɪs]<br/>n. 根据</p>                 | <p>We judge a worker on the <b>basis</b> of his performance.<br/>我们以工作成绩作为评估一个工人的根据。</p>                      |
| <p><b>bother</b> ['bɒðə(r)]<br/>v. 烦扰</p>               | <p>Don't <b>bother</b> me with such foolish questions.<br/>不要用如此愚蠢的问题来烦我。</p>                                 |
| <p><b>candle</b> ['kændl]<br/>n. 蜡烛</p>                 | <p>There are ten <b>candles</b> on his birthday cake.<br/>他的生日蛋糕上有 10 支蜡烛。</p>                                |
| <p><b>choice</b> [tʃɔɪs]<br/>n. 被选的人或物;<br/>选择</p>      | <p>I don't like her, but if she's the people's <b>choice</b> I will obey her. 我不喜欢她, 可是如果她是大家选上的, 我会服从她。</p>  |
| <p><b>compound</b><br/>[kəm'paʊnd]<br/>v. 调配</p>        | <p>He <b>compounded</b> various substances into an effective medicine.<br/>他把不同的物质调配成特效药。</p>                 |
| <p><b>constitute</b><br/>['kɒnstɪtju:t]<br/>v. 组成</p>   | <p>Government should be <b>constituted</b> by the will of the people.<br/>政府的组成应顺从民意。</p>                     |
| <p><b>deck</b> [dek]<br/>v. 甲板</p>                      | <p>It's very hot in the cabin; let's go on the <b>deck</b>.<br/>舱房内很热, 我们到甲板上去吧!</p>                          |

**despise** | Fools *despise* wisdom and instruction.  
 [dis'paɪz] | 傻瓜轻视智慧和教育。  
 v. 轻视

**Exercise 13.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Einstein's knowledge is so specialized that I cannot \_\_\_\_\_ it.
2. I am sorry to \_\_\_\_\_ you, but can you tell me the time?
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ light is not as strong as the sunlight.
4. Boys who tell lies and cheat at examinations are \_\_\_\_\_ by their classmates.
5. Seven specialists \_\_\_\_\_ the committee to investigate the accident.

【解答】 1. appreciate    2. bother    3. candle  
 4. despised    5. constituted

《第二部分》

**distribute** | The teacher *distributed* the examination papers to each student of the class.  
 [dis'tribju:t] | 老师分发试卷给班上每一位同学。  
 v. 分发

**educate** | He was *educated* at a very good school when he was young.  
 ['edju:kert] | 他年轻时在一所非常好的学校接受教育。  
 v. 教育

**enthusiastic** | My little brother is very *enthusiastic* about going to kindergarten.  
 [ɪn,θju:zɪ'æstɪk] | 我的小弟非常喜欢上幼儿园。  
 adj. 热心的

|                                                 |                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>explode</b><br>[ɪks'pləʊd]<br>v. 爆炸          | The bomb fell on a field and <b>exploded</b> harm-<br>lessly.<br>炸弹落在田野中爆炸, 没有造成损伤。                        |
| <b>fault</b> [fɔ:lt]<br>n. 缺点                   | She loves him in spite of his <b>faults</b> .<br>他虽然有缺点, 但她仍然爱他。                                           |
| <b>flood</b> [flʌd]<br>n. 水灾                    | The rain-storms caused <b>floods</b> in the low-lying<br>parts of the town.<br>暴雨在此镇的低洼处造成水灾。              |
| <b>funeral</b><br>['fju:nərəl]<br>n. 葬礼         | Many friends attended the old lady's <b>funeral</b> .<br>很多朋友参加了那老妇人的葬礼。                                   |
| <b>grant</b> [grɑ:nt]<br>v. 准许<br>同 allow, give | He was <b>granted</b> admission from Harvard Uni-<br>versity for the next fall semester.<br>哈佛大学准许他明年秋季入学。 |
| <b>heap</b> [hi:p]<br>v. 装满<br>同 pile           | The mother <b>heaped</b> the child's plate with<br>food.<br>母亲将孩子的盘子装满食物。                                  |
| <b>immediate</b><br>[ɪ'mi:djət]<br>adj. 紧急的     | When there is a fire, it is necessary to take<br><b>immediate</b> action.<br>发生火灾时, 必须采取紧急行动。              |

**Exercise 13.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. Our requests for financial assistance were \_\_\_\_\_ by the committee.
2. Please send a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ reply to my letter.
3. He is always finding \_\_\_\_\_ with the way I do my hair.
4. The boiler \_\_\_\_\_ and many people were injured by the hot

steam.

5. The postman had thirty letters to be \_\_\_\_\_ at houses all over the town.

【解答】 1. granted      2. immediate      3. fault  
4. exploded      5. distributed

《第三部分》

**instance** | Lincoln is an *instance* of a poor boy who became famous.  
[ˈɪnstəns] |  
n. 例子 | 林肯是一个由穷孩子变成名人的例子。

**jewel** [ˈdʒu:əl] | The *jewel* in her ring is a diamond.  
n. 珠宝 | 她戒指上的珠宝是颗钻石。

**lap** [læp] | Mother holds the baby on her *lap*.  
n. 膝部 | 母亲把孩子抱在膝上。

**locate** [ləʊˈkeɪt] | Where shall we *locate* our new office?  
v. 设置 | 我们的新办公室将设在哪里？

**marvel** [ˈmɑ:vəl] | Space travel is one of the *marvels* of our time.  
n. 奇异之事 | 太空旅行是我们这个时代的奇事之一。

**minute** | He gave me a *minute* description of the structure of the building.  
[maɪˈnju:t] |  
adj. 详细的 | 他给了我这栋建筑物构造的详细说明。

**mysterious** | She had a *mysterious* telephone call last night.  
[mɪsˈtɪəriəs] |  
adj. 神秘的 | 她昨晚接到一个神秘电话。

**oblige** | The students were *obliged* to do what the  
 [ə'blaɪdʒ] | teacher had asked.  
*v.* 强迫 | 学生必须做老师所要求的事。

**outbreak** | The *outbreak* of disorder was put down by the  
 ['aʊtbreɪk] | police in two hours.  
*n.* 暴动 | 警察在两小时内镇压了混乱的暴动。

**participate** | Most of the students *participated* in the dis-  
 [pɑ:'tɪsɪpeɪt] | cussion.  
*v.* 参与 | 大部分的学生参与了讨论。

*Exercise 13.3* 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. He gave me \_\_\_\_\_ instructions about how to do my work.
2. The airplane and television are among the \_\_\_\_\_ of science.
3. Television is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of improved communication facilities.
4. They were \_\_\_\_\_ to sell their house in order to pay their debts.
5. The disappearance of the ship still remains \_\_\_\_\_.

【解答】 1. minute    2. marvels    3. instance  
 4. obliged    5. mysterious

《第四部分》

**perilous** | It is always *perilous* to neglect our national  
 ['perɪləs] | defense.  
*adj.* 危险的 | 忽视国防始终都是危险的。

**polite** | He was *polite* to everyone he met at the party.  
 [pə'laɪt] | 他对每一个在宴会上遇到的人都很客气。  
*adj.* 客气的

|                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>priest</b>[pri:st]<br/>n. 牧师</p>                                  | <p>The <i>priest</i> will lead the church ceremony.<br/>牧师将带领做礼拜仪式。</p>                                                                                           |
| <p><b>purchase</b><br/>['pɜ:tʃəs]<br/>v. 购买<br/>n. 购买<br/>同 buy</p>     | <p>They've just <i>purchased</i> a new house near the school.<br/>他们刚在学校附近买了一栋房子。<br/>They saved their money for the <i>purchase</i> of a house.<br/>他们存钱买房子。</p> |
| <p><b>reference</b><br/>['refərəns]<br/>n. 参考</p>                       | <p>The journalist kept a card file of information on his desk for easy <i>reference</i>.<br/>新闻记者为了方便参考,将资料的目录卡放在桌上。</p>                                          |
| <p><b>request</b><br/>[ri'kwest]<br/>v. 邀请<br/>n. 请求<br/>同 ask, beg</p> | <p>He <i>requested</i> her to go fishing with him.<br/>他邀她一起去钓鱼。<br/>Your <i>request</i> for a ticket was made too late.<br/>你索取入场券太迟了。</p>                       |
| <p><b>ripe</b>[raip]<br/>adj. 成熟的<br/>反 unripe</p>                      | <p><i>Ripe</i> fruits taste good; unripe fruits usually taste bad.<br/>成熟的水果味道不错;不熟的水果通常不好吃。</p>                                                                  |
| <p><b>satisfy</b><br/>['sætɪsfai]<br/>v. 使满意</p>                        | <p>Nothing <i>satisfies</i> him; he is always complaining.<br/>没有东西能让他满意;他总是在抱怨。</p>                                                                              |
| <p><b>security</b><br/>[sɪ'kjʊərəti]<br/>n. 安全</p>                      | <p>I helped the old lady cross the street in <i>security</i>. 我帮助那老太太安全过街。</p>                                                                                    |

|                    |                                                         |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>shortcoming</b> | He is a good man, but he has many <i>shortcomings</i> . |
| [ˈʃɔːtkʌmɪŋ]       |                                                         |
| <i>n.</i> 缺点       | 他是一个好人,可是仍有许多缺点。                                        |

**Exercise 13.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Keep the dictionary on your desk for easy \_\_\_\_\_.
2. We \_\_\_\_\_ a loan from the City Bank.
3. The apples are not \_\_\_\_\_ enough to eat.
4. In spite of my friend's \_\_\_\_\_, I still like him.
5. He \_\_\_\_\_ his hunger with bread and milk.

**【解答】** 1. reference      2. requested      3. ripe  
4. shortcomings      5. satisfied

《第五部分》

|                                                                                           |                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <b>smash</b> [smæʃ]                                                                       | The cup <i>smashed</i> when the girl dropped it. |
| <i>v.</i> 打成粉碎                                                                            | 女孩掉落了杯子,把它打得粉碎。                                  |
| <i>n.</i> 破碎声                                                                             |                                                  |
|  crush |                                                  |

|                                                                                            |                                                    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <b>spin</b> [spɪn]                                                                         | There were hundreds of machines <i>spinning</i>    |
| <i>v.</i> 1. 纺                                                                             | cotton into thread.<br>有几百部机器将棉纺成纱。                |
| 2. 旋转                                                                                      | The earth <i>spins</i> as it moves around the sun. |
|  rotate | 地球在绕着太阳公转的同时也自转。                                   |

|                        |                                                |
|------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <b>steady</b> [ˈstedɪ] | He is making <i>steady</i> progress at school. |
| <i>adj.</i> 稳定的        | 他在校的成绩在稳步提高。                                   |

|                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>stuff</b>[stʌf]<br/> <i>n.</i> 材料<br/>                     同 substance<br/> <i>v.</i> 塞入; 塞满<br/>                     同 fill<br/>                     反 empty</p> | <p>The shoes were made of some <i>stuff</i> that looked like leather.<br/>                     那鞋子是用一些像皮革一样的材料制成的。<br/>                     She <i>stuffed</i> the pillow with feathers.<br/>                     她将羽毛塞入枕头里。</p> |
| <p><b>sweat</b>[swet]<br/> <i>n.</i> 汗<br/> <i>v.</i> 出汗</p>                                                                                                            | <p>The old farmer wiped the <i>sweat</i> off his brow.<br/>                     那老农夫擦去额上的汗珠。<br/>                     We <i>sweat</i> when it is very hot.<br/>                     天很热时, 我们出汗。</p>                              |
| <p><b>terrible</b><br/>                     ['terəbl]<br/> <i>adj.</i> 可怕的</p>                                                                                          | <p>The <i>terrible</i> storm destroyed many houses in the town.<br/>                     可怕的暴风雨摧毁了镇上许多房子。</p>                                                                                                                    |
| <p><b>torch</b>[tɔ:tʃ]<br/> <i>n.</i> 火把</p>                                                                                                                            | <p>The Statue of Liberty holds a <i>torch</i> in her right hand.<br/>                     自由女神像的右手握了一支火把。</p>                                                                                                                    |
| <p><b>turtle</b>['tɜ:tl]<br/> <i>n.</i> 龟</p>                                                                                                                           | <p><i>Turtles</i> live in fresh or salt water or on land.<br/>                     龟生活在淡水、海水里或陆地上。</p>                                                                                                                           |
| <p><b>victim</b><br/>                     ['vɪktɪm]<br/> <i>n.</i> 受害者</p>                                                                                              | <p>They were the <i>victims</i> of a dishonest merchant.<br/>                     他们是一个奸商的受害者。</p>                                                                                                                               |
| <p><b>welfare</b><br/>                     ['welfeə(r)]<br/> <i>n.</i> 幸福</p>                                                                                           | <p>They did everything for the <i>welfare</i> of their children.<br/>                     他们所做的每一件事, 都是为了孩子的幸福。</p>                                                                                                              |

Exercise 13.5 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. She \_\_\_\_\_ the trunk with old clothing.

2. He kept up a \_\_\_\_\_ speed on the road.
3. Climbing up the hill made us \_\_\_\_\_ much.
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ fire filled the sky with flames.
5. He fell a \_\_\_\_\_ to the dagger of an assassin.

【解答】 1. stuffed 2. steady 3. sweat 4. terrible  
5. victim

## 效果检测

**Exercise 13.6** 找出一个与其他三个不相关的词：

- |       |                    |                  |
|-------|--------------------|------------------|
| _____ | 1. (A) safety      | (B) protection   |
|       | (C) security       | (D) victim       |
| _____ | 2. (A) shortcoming | (B) defect       |
|       | (C) victim         | (D) weakness     |
| _____ | 3. (A) perilous    | (B) risky        |
|       | (C) dangerous      | (D) steep        |
| _____ | 4. (A) ripe        | (B) enthusiastic |
|       | (C) eager          | (D) anxious      |
| _____ | 5. (A) instance    | (B) fault        |
|       | (C) example        | (D) case         |
| _____ | 6. (A) grant       | (B) grand        |
|       | (C) allow          | (D) give         |
| _____ | 7. (A) study       | (B) teach        |
|       | (C) instruct       | (D) educate      |
| _____ | 8. (A) assemble    | (B) gather       |
|       | (C) participate    | (D) accumulate   |
| _____ | 9. (A) achieve     | (B) participate  |

- (C) perform (D) accomplish  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 10. (A) welfare (B) well-being  
 (C) happiness (D) outbreak

**【解答】** 1. D 2. C 3. D 4. A 5. B  
 6. B 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. D

**Exercise 13.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. 安全  
 (A) decoration (B) foundation  
 (C) substance (D) security
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. 汗  
 (A) instance (B) sweat (C) spell (D) flood
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. 分发  
 (A) distribute (B) participate  
 (C) smash (D) accumulate
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. 打成粉碎  
 (A) explode (B) spin (C) smash (D) heap
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. 火把  
 (A) marvel (B) torch (C) stuff (D) turtle

**【解答】** 1. D 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. B

**Exercise 13.8** 找出一个与斜体词的意义相反的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. *esteem*  
 (A) admire (B) comprise (C) despise (D) annoy
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. *merit*  
 (A) benefit (B) defect (C) wonder (D) victim

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. *ripe*

- (A) safe (B) fault (C) direct (D) raw

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. *drought*

- (A) flood (B) outbreak (C) sweat (D) well-being

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. *perilous*

- (A) dull (B) safe (C) terrible (D) changing

【解答】 1. C 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. B

**Exercise 13.9** 完整拼出下列句中所欠缺的单词：

1. We took the v \_\_\_\_\_ ms of the storm into our house for the night. (受害者)
2. He has worked for the w \_\_\_\_\_ e of the nation throughout his life. (幸福)
3. The band is playing this song by r \_\_\_\_\_ t of the Queen. (请求)
4. You will never a \_\_\_\_\_ e anything if you don't work hard. (获得)
5. She was very careful in her c \_\_\_\_\_ e of friends. (选择)

【解答】 1. victims 2. welfare 3. request 4. achieve  
5. choice

**Exercise 13.10** 找出一个与斜体词的意义最接近的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The problem *bothered* the scientists for many year.  
(A) annoyed (B) bored  
(C) amused (D) consolidated
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. He gave me a *minute* description of his house.  
(A) important (B) precise

- (C) splendid (D) fundamental
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The operation was a *marvel* of medical skill.  
 (A) success (B) jewel (C) merit (D) wonder
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. He has many *shortcomings*, but I still love him.  
 (A) pains (B) destiny (C) defects (D) outbreaks
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. His office is *located* on the ground floor.  
 (A) compounded (B) situated  
 (C) floated (D) constituted
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. She *heaped* the dirty clothes to the washing machine.  
 (A) placed (B) smashed (C) piled (D) achieved
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. All the teachers *took* part in the children's game.  
 (A) participated (B) discussed  
 (C) requested (D) wanted
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. A *gem* is a precious stone.  
 (A) spell (B) marble (C) stuff (D) jewel
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. She purchased a new dress in her friend's shop.  
 (A) ordered (B) bought (C) sold (D) requested
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. The *courteous* boy gave the lady his seat on the bus.  
 (A) tired (B) polite  
 (C) wholesome (D) jealous

【解答】 1. A 2. B 3. D 4. C 5. B  
 6. C 7. A 8. D 9. B 10. B

## LESSON 14

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. A *greedy* person wants to have everything as \_\_\_\_\_ as possible.  
(A) much (B) little
2. The boy took the \_\_\_\_\_ to the *pasture* every morning.  
(A) cats (B) cows
3. A *carpenter* makes things with \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) wood (B) stones
4. The hill is so *steep* that it is very \_\_\_\_\_ to climb.  
(A) easy (B) difficult
5. He was sent to \_\_\_\_\_ for his *crimes*.  
(A) hospital (B) prison

## ◆ 解 答 ◆

1. A 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. B

## 《第一部分》

**actual** ['æktʃʊəl]

adj. 实际的

☐ true, real

The **actual** amount of money was not known although they knew it was large. 虽然他们知道钱数很大, 不过仍不知道实际的数目。

**ash** [æʃ]

n. 灰

Dont't drop your cigarette **ash** on the carpet; use an ashtray.

不要把烟灰抖落在地毯上, 用烟灰缸。

|                                                                                        |                                                                                                                             |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>beat</b>[bi:t]<br/>v. 打<br/>同 strike, hit</p>                                    | <p>The rain was <i>beating</i> against the windows.<br/>雨点正打在窗上。</p>                                                        |
| <p><b>bowl</b>[bəʊl]<br/>n. 碗</p>                                                      | <p>He ate only one <i>bowl</i> of rice and drank a glass of milk.<br/>他只吃了一碗饭,喝了一杯牛奶。</p>                                   |
| <p><b>carpenter</b><br/>['kɑ:pəntə(r)]<br/>n. 木匠</p>                                   | <p>A <i>carpenter</i> builds and repairs the wooden parts of houses, barns or ships.<br/>木匠建造和修补房屋、谷仓或船的木制部分。</p>           |
| <p><b>circumstance</b><br/>['sɜ:kəmstəns]<br/>n. 情况</p>                                | <p>In no <i>circumstances</i> must a soldier leave his post without permission. 不论是什么情况,士兵没有得到许可,绝不能离开岗位。</p>               |
| <p><b>conceive</b><br/>[kən'si:v]<br/>v. 想像<br/>同 think, imagine<br/>n. conception</p> | <p>Young children like to watch television; they cannot <i>conceive</i> of life without it.<br/>小孩子喜欢看电视;他们无法想像没有电视的生活。</p> |
| <p><b>contain</b><br/>[kən'tein]<br/>v. 含有</p>                                         | <p>The book <i>contains</i> all the information you need.<br/>这本书里有你需要的所有知识。</p>                                            |
| <p><b>crime</b>[kraim]<br/>n. 罪<br/>同 offense</p>                                      | <p>He was found guilty of committing a serious <i>crime</i>.<br/>他被发现犯有重罪。</p>                                              |

|                                                                    |                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>decorate</b><br/>[ˈdekəreɪt]<br/>v. 装饰<br/>n. decoration</p> | <p>The streets were <i>decorated</i> with flags for the King's visit.<br/>由于国王来访,街上悬挂旗帜作为装饰。</p> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**Exercise 14.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The boy \_\_\_\_\_ the girl with a stick.
2. The book \_\_\_\_\_ a good deal of useful information.
3. I can't \_\_\_\_\_ of your allowing a child of five to go on such a long journey alone.
4. We \_\_\_\_\_ the Christmas tree with shining balls and bells last year.
5. If you commit a \_\_\_\_\_ you must expect to be punished.

**【解答】** 1. beat 2. contains 3. conceive 4. decorated  
5. crime

《第二部分》

|                                                                        |                                                                                               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>determine</b><br/>[dɪ'tɜ:mɪn]<br/>v. 决定<br/>n. determination</p> | <p>The size of your shoes is <i>determined</i> by the size of your feet.<br/>你脚的大小决定鞋的尺寸。</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                         |                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>divide</b>[dɪ'vaɪd]<br/>v. 隔开</p> | <p>The small river <i>divides</i> my land from his.<br/>这条小河隔开我和他的地。</p> |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                      |                                                                                                            |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>elbow</b>[ˈelbəʊ]<br/>n. 肘</p> | <p>He was watching television with his <i>elbows</i> bent, his chin in his hands.<br/>他正弯着肘,用手托着下巴看电视。</p> |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>entrance</b><br/>[ˈentrəns]<br/>n. 入口</p>                                      | <p>The <b>entrance</b> to the cave had been blocked up.<br/>洞穴的入口已被堵塞。</p>                                                                                                                 |
| <p><b>expense</b><br/>[ɪksˈpens]<br/>n. 费用</p>                                       | <p>Most children are educated at public <b>expense</b>.<br/>大多数儿童靠公费受教育。</p>                                                                                                               |
| <p><b>feast</b>[fi:st]<br/>n. 盛宴<br/>同 banquet</p>                                   | <p>The king invited them to a <b>feast</b> last night.<br/>国王昨晚邀请他们参加盛宴。</p>                                                                                                               |
| <p><b>fog</b>[fɒg]<br/>n. 雾<br/>同 mist<br/>adj. foggy</p>                            | <p>We often have had <b>fogs</b> on the southern coast during winter.<br/>冬天在南海岸经常有大雾。</p>                                                                                                 |
| <p><b>furnish</b>[ˈfɜ:nɪʃ]<br/>v. 1. 供给<br/>同 supply, give<br/>2. 装修<br/>同 equip</p> | <p>No one in the class could <b>furnish</b> the right answer to the question.<br/>班上无人能为此问题提供正确的答案。<br/>The new hotel is finished, but it is not yet <b>furnished</b>. 新旅馆已完工, 可是尚未装修。</p> |
| <p><b>greedy</b>[ˈɡri:di]<br/>adj. 贪心的</p>                                           | <p>Don't be so <b>greedy</b>! There is enough for everyone. 不要如此贪心! 每个人都够分。</p>                                                                                                            |
| <p><b>hesitate</b><br/>[ˈhezɪteɪt]<br/>v. 不愿; 犹豫</p>                                 | <p>He <b>hesitated</b> to take such a big risk in his business.<br/>他不愿在事业上冒这么大的风险。</p>                                                                                                    |

**Exercise 14.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. He got a deep wound on his right \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ is the sailor's greatest enemy.
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ to the hotel was blocked with baggage so that no one could enter or leave.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ to take his side until I knew the whole story.
5. This hotel \_\_\_\_\_ clean sheets and towels every day.

【解答】 1. elbow 2. fog 3. entrance 4. hesitated  
5. furnishes

《第三部分》

|                                                         |                                                                                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>impossible</b><br/>[im'pɒsəbl]<br/>adj. 不可能的</p>  | <p>Today it is <i>impossible</i> to cure cancer completely.<br/>今天要完全治愈癌症是不可能的。</p>     |
| <p><b>institution</b><br/>[ɪnstɪ'tju:ʃən]<br/>n. 机构</p> | <p>Colleges and universities are educational <i>institutions</i>.<br/>学院和大学都是教育机构。</p>  |
| <p><b>journal</b><br/>['dʒɜ:nəl]<br/>n. 杂志</p>          | <p>Both he and his wife write for a business <i>journal</i>.<br/>他和他妻子都为商业杂志撰稿。</p>     |
| <p><b>launch</b>[lɔ:ntʃ]<br/>v. 发射</p>                  | <p>The United States <i>launched</i> a new spaceship yesterday.<br/>美国昨天发射了一艘新的太空船。</p> |

|                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>loss</b>[lɒs]<br/> <i>n.</i> 丧失<br/> <input type="checkbox"/> gain<br/> <i>v.</i> lose</p>       | <p><b>Loss</b> of health is more serious than loss of wealth.<br/>         失去健康比损失财富要严重。</p>                                                                                          |
| <p><b>match</b>[mætʃ]<br/> <i>v.</i> 1. 匹敌<br/>         2. 相配<br/> <input type="checkbox"/> become</p> | <p>You can't <b>match</b> him in knowledge of wild plants.<br/>         在野生植物方面的知识,你不能和他相比。<br/>         The drapes of the room <b>match</b> the rug of the floor. 房间的窗帘和地上的毯子相配。</p> |
| <p><b>misfortune</b><br/>         [mɪs'fɔ:tʃən]<br/> <i>n.</i> 坏运气;不幸</p>                              | <p>His failure in business was due not to <b>misfortune</b>, but to his mistakes. 他生意上的失败不是因为运气差,而是因为他犯了错误。</p>                                                                       |
| <p><b>native</b>['neɪtɪv]<br/> <i>adj.</i> 本国的</p>                                                     | <p>The politician was never popular in his <b>native</b> country.<br/>         那政客在本国从不受欢迎。</p>                                                                                       |
| <p><b>obvious</b><br/>         ['ɒbvɪəs]<br/> <i>adj.</i> 明显的</p>                                      | <p>It is <b>obvious</b> that two and two makes four.<br/>         很显然,2加2等于4。</p>                                                                                                     |
| <p><b>outstanding</b><br/>         [aʊt'stændɪŋ]<br/> <i>adj.</i> 杰出的</p>                              | <p>He is an <b>outstanding</b> pitcher because of his ball control.<br/>         他因控球好而成为杰出的投手。</p>                                                                                   |

**Exercise 14.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. One of the \_\_\_\_\_ animals of India is the tiger.
2. She always thought that the greatest of her \_\_\_\_\_ was that she'd never had any children.

3. The carpets should \_\_\_\_\_ the wallpaper.  
 4. The \_\_\_\_\_ of so many ships worried the admiral.  
 5. The new ship was \_\_\_\_\_ as the crowd cheered.

【解答】 1. native 2. misfortunes 3. match 4. loss  
 5. launched

《第四部分》

|                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>pasture</b><br/>           ['pɑ:stʃə(r)]<br/> <i>n.</i> 草地</p>                                                                          | <p>I saw many horses grazing on the <b>pasture</b>.<br/>           我看见许多马在草地上吃草。</p>                                                        |
| <p><b>personality</b><br/>           [ˌpɜ:sə'næləti]<br/> <i>n.</i> 人格</p>                                                                    | <p>She was elected class president because her good <b>personality</b>.<br/>           她因品格好而被选为班长。</p>                                     |
| <p><b>port</b> [pɔ:t]<br/> <i>n.</i> 港口<br/>  harbor</p>   | <p>New York and San Francisco are important <b>ports</b> of the United States.<br/>           纽约和旧金山都是美国重要的港口。</p>                          |
| <p><b>privilege</b><br/>           ['prɪvɪlɪdʒ]<br/> <i>n.</i> 特权</p>                                                                         | <p>The members of the club have the <b>privilege</b> of buying the football ticket at special rates.<br/>           此会的会员有权以特价买到足球赛入场券。</p> |
| <p><b>puzzle</b> ['pʌzl]<br/> <i>n.</i> 谜<br/>  riddle</p> | <p>No one has yet succeeded in explaining the <b>puzzle</b> of how life first began. 至今尚无人能圆满地解释生命最初是如何开始的。</p>                             |

|                                                                                            |                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>region</b> [ˈri:dʒən]<br/> <i>n.</i> 区域<br/>         同 area</p>                      | <p>New York is one of the <b>regions</b> of the United States.<br/>         纽约是美国的一个地区。</p>                     |
| <p><b>resemble</b><br/>         [riˈzembl]<br/> <i>v.</i> 相似</p>                           | <p>They <b>resemble</b> each other in shape but not in color.<br/>         它们的形状相似,可是颜色不同。</p>                  |
| <p><b>roast</b> [rəʊst]<br/> <i>v.</i> 烤</p>                                               | <p>We need an oven to <b>roast</b> meat and potatoes.<br/>         我们需要一个炉子来烤肉和马铃薯。</p>                         |
| <p><b>savage</b> [ˈsævi:dʒ]<br/> <i>adj.</i> 野蛮的<br/>         同 barbarous, wild</p>        | <p>They carried guns to protect themselves from the <b>savage</b> tribes.<br/>         他们带枪以保护自己,防备野蛮部落的攻击。</p> |
| <p><b>sentiment</b><br/>         [ˈsentimənt]<br/> <i>n.</i> 情感<br/>         同 feeling</p> | <p>The young girls preferred stories full of <b>sentiments</b>.<br/>         年轻女孩比较喜欢富有情感的故事。</p>               |

**Exercise 14.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. In modern times there is less \_\_\_\_\_ and more of an equal chance in life for everyone.
2. There is only one \_\_\_\_\_ along this rocky coast.
3. She \_\_\_\_\_ her sister in appearance but not in character.
4. Instead of frying, she likes to \_\_\_\_\_ the meat.
5. How to get all my clothes into one suitcase was a \_\_\_\_\_.

**【解答】** 1. privilege 2. port 3. resembles 4. roast  
 5. puzzle

## 《第五部分》

|                                                   |                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>silence</b> [ˈsaɪləns]<br>n. 安静<br>同 quietness | Students are required to maintain <b>silence</b> in the library.<br>学生在图书馆中被要求保持安静。                          |
| <b>sob</b> [sɒb]<br>v. 啜泣<br>同 weep               | She <b>sobbed</b> when she heard the bad news.<br>她听到坏消息时哭了。                                                 |
| <b>spit</b> [spɪt]<br>v. 吐出                       | Please <b>spit</b> out your gum before you came into the classroom.<br>进入教室前, 请把你的口香糖吐掉。                     |
| <b>steep</b> [sti:p]<br>adj. 陡峭的                  | The hill was too <b>steep</b> for them to climb.<br>那座山太陡, 他们不能爬。                                            |
| <b>substantial</b><br>[səbˈstænʃəl]<br>adj. 相当的   | John has made a <b>substantial</b> improvement in his health.<br>约翰的健康已大有改善。                                 |
| <b>swift</b> [swɪft]<br>adj. 急速的                  | Be careful not to fall down; the current of the river is <b>swift</b> .<br>当心别掉下去, 河流很急。                     |
| <b>thermometer</b><br>[θəˈmɒmɪtə(r)]<br>n. 温度计    | The doctor used a clinical <b>thermometer</b> to measure the patient's temperature.<br>医生用体温表测量病人的体温。        |
| <b>tower</b> [ˈtaʊə(r)]<br>n. 塔                   | You should visit the <b>Tower</b> of London when you have a chance to visit England.<br>你有机会去英国时, 应该游览一下伦敦塔。 |

|                                                               |                                                                                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>typical</b> [ˈtɪpɪkəl]<br/>adj. 有代表性的<br/>v. typify</p> | <p>Turkey is a <b>typical</b> food for the Thanksgiving Day dinner.<br/>火鸡是感恩节晚餐的代表性食物。</p>                       |
| <p><b>virgin</b> [ˈvɜːdʒɪn]<br/>n. 少女</p>                     | <p>The man decided to marry a <b>virgin</b> who lives in the house next to his uncle.<br/>那人决定娶一位住在他叔叔家隔壁的少女。</p> |
| <p><b>whisper</b><br/>[ˈwɪspə(r)]<br/>v. 悄悄地说</p>             | <p>She <b>whispered</b> a few words at the corner.<br/>她在角落悄声地说了一些话。</p>                                          |

**Exercise 14.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. If you \_\_\_\_\_ in the classroom, you may be punished by the teacher.
2. A \_\_\_\_\_ rise in living cost makes our life hard.
3. The building is a \_\_\_\_\_ 18th century church.
4. What the \_\_\_\_\_ is to temperature, the speedometer is to speed.
5. He has \_\_\_\_\_ evidence for his claim.

【解答】 1. spit 2. steep 3. typical 4. thermometer  
5. substantial

## 效果检测

**Exercise 14.6** 找出一个与斜体词的意义最接近的单词:

1. to *decorate* the wall with paintings  
(A) furnish (B) adorn (C) match (D) describe
2. a serious *offence*

- (A) crime (B) attack (C) expense (D) misfortune
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. a *port* in the southern coast  
(A) island (B) city (C) tower (D) harbor
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. an *outstanding* achievement  
(A) unknown (B) impossible  
(C) prominent (D) evident
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. a *swift* glance  
(A) secret (B) wild (C) slight (D) quick
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. to *furnish* a new building  
(A) decorate (B) equip (C) finish (D) purchase
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. to get invited to a *feast*  
(A) parlor (B) funeral (C) banquet (D) wedding
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. a *substantial* improvement  
(A) great (B) actual  
(C) surprising (D) unexpected
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. an *obvious* mistake  
(A) insignificant (B) serious  
(C) evident (D) real
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. a difficult *puzzle*  
(A) riddle (B) work (C) language (D) battle

**【解答】** 1. B    2. A    3. D    4. C    5. D  
6. B    7. C    8. B    9. C    10. A

**Exercise 14.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. 特权  
(A) priest (B) character (C) privilege (D) journal
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. 相似  
(A) waver (B) resemble (C) assume (D) match

- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. 野蛮的  
 (A) savage (B) flat (C) native (D) impossible
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. 有代表性的  
 (A) substantial (B) outstanding  
 (C) genuine (D) typical
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. 费用  
 (A) loss (B) instance (C) expense (D) reference

**【解答】** 1. C 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. C

**Exercise 14.8** 找出一个与斜体词的意义相反的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. *noise*  
 (A) well-being (B) merit  
 (C) luck (D) silence
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. *gain*  
 (A) crime (B) loss  
 (C) virgin (D) misfortune
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. *contain*  
 (A) divide (B) conceive  
 (C) spit (D) exclude
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. *misfortune*  
 (A) offense (B) feast  
 (C) luck (D) welfare
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. *exit*  
 (A) entrance (B) include  
 (C) encourage (D) gain

**【解答】** 1. D 2. B 3. D 4. C 5. A



- (C) ashes (D) noises
6. Before we judge a person's act, we must know all the \_\_\_\_\_.
- (A) circumstances (B) expenses  
(C) puzzles (D) faults
7. The king and his nobles celebrated the birth of his heir with a \_\_\_\_\_.
- (A) bowl (B) benefit  
(C) sob (D) feast
8. It is \_\_\_\_\_ to grow rice in the desert.
- (A) genuine (B) impossible  
(C) perilous (D) partial
9. There are many \_\_\_\_\_ in our society such as churches, schools, hospitals and prisons.
- (A) institutions (B) foundations  
(C) journals (D) regions
10. He gave his friend the \_\_\_\_\_ of using his private library.
- (A) reference (B) security  
(C) privilege (D) expense

**【解答】** 1. D    2. A    3. B    4. D    5. C  
6. A    7. D    8. B    9. A    10. C

**Exercise 14.11** 将题前的斜体词转换为适当的词性,填入空格内:

1. *decorate*    The \_\_\_\_\_ of the party were bright and cheery.
2. *determine*    He has a firm \_\_\_\_\_ to do his best in the final examination.
3. *entrance*    The thief \_\_\_\_\_ through a rear window last night.
4. *expense*    The price of this radio is very \_\_\_\_\_.
5. *greedy*    His \_\_\_\_\_ for money led him to steal a painting

from the museum.

**【解答】** 1. decorations 2. determination 3. entered  
4. expensive 5. greed

LESSON 15

预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. Dogs \_\_\_\_\_ to be *patted*.  
 (A) like (B) hate
2. A *thirsty* person wants to have something to \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) eat (B) drink
3. Because of the \_\_\_\_\_ harvest of crops, there is a *scarcity* of food.  
 (A) enough (B) poor
4. He was filled with *envy* at my \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) success (B) failure
5. *Expedition* is a \_\_\_\_\_ made for some special purpose.  
 (A) journey (B) plan

◆ 解 答 ◆

1.A 2.B 3.B 4.A 5.A

《第一部分》

|                                                                                     |                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>additional</b><br/>[ə'dɪʃənəl]<br/><i>adj.</i> 额外的<br/><i>n.</i> addition</p> | <p>Mother needs <b>additional</b> help in the kitchen when we have guests for dinner.<br/>晚餐有客人时, 母亲在厨房里需要额外的帮忙。</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                     |                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>aspect</b><br/>[ˈæspekt]<br/><i>n.</i> 方面</p> | <p>You must consider all <b>aspects</b> of this plan before we decide. 在我们决定前, 你必须把这计划的各个方面都考虑到。</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**beard** [biəd] My grandfather has a long **beard** on his chin  
and cheeks.  
*n.* 胡子  
祖父的下巴和脸颊上留着长胡子。

**brass** [brɑ:s] He has **brass** buttons on his jackets.  
*n.* 黄铜  
他的夹克上有黄铜扣子。

**carve** [kɑ:v] The picture was **carved** on the surface of  
wood.  
*v.* 雕刻  
▢ inscribe  
那幅画被雕刻在木头的表面上。

**civil** ['sivəl] The judge ordered that the prisoner should lose  
his **civil** rights.  
*adj.* 1. 公民的  
法官决定这犯人应丧失公民权。  
2. 平民的  
The soldiers thought that it would be a long  
*n.* civilian time before **civil** government would be  
reestablished.  
士兵们认为要在很久以后才能重建文官政府。

**concern** Don't trouble about things that don't **concern**  
[kən'sɜ:n] you.  
*v.* 1. 关于  
不要为无关的事烦恼。  
2. 关心  
I am very much **concerned** about the future of  
this country.  
▢ 1. affect  
▢ 2. interest  
我非常关心这个国家的前途。

|                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>contest</b><br/>[ 'kɒntest ]<br/>n. 竞赛</p> <p>同 competition,<br/>struggle, conflict</p> <p>[ kən'test ]<br/>v. 争斗</p> <p>同 compete</p> | <p>The <b>contest</b> between France and England for North America ended in victory for England.<br/>法国和英国争夺北美的竞赛, 结果英国胜利。</p> <p>The blackbirds <b>contested</b> with one another for nesting territory.<br/>乌鸫鸟为筑巢的地点互相争斗。</p> |
| <p><b>critical</b><br/>[ 'krɪtɪkəl ]<br/>adj. 1. 吹毛求疵的</p> <p>同 faultfinding</p> <p>2. 危急的</p>                                               | <p>I don't like people who are too <b>critical</b> about everything.<br/>我不喜欢对每件事都太吹毛求疵的人。</p> <p>His condition is reported as being very <b>critical</b>.<br/>有人报道说他的情况非常危急。</p>                                                |
| <p><b>decrease</b><br/>[ di:'kri:s ]<br/>v. 减少</p> <p>同 increase</p>                                                                         | <p>The workmen want to <b>decrease</b> the number of working hours and to increase pay.<br/>工人们要求减少工作时间, 增加工资。</p>                                                                                                               |

**Exercise 15.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

- The doctor \_\_\_\_\_ himself about the health of his aged patient.
- Government must protect the \_\_\_\_\_ rights of its citizens.
- If you really understand the difficulties of the government, you wouldn't be so \_\_\_\_\_ of its policy.
- John no longer wears a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is made by mixing copper and zinc.

【解答】 1. concerned 2. civil 3. critical 4. beard  
5. Brass

## 《第二部分》

|                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>device</b><br/>[dɪ'vaɪs]<br/><i>n.</i> 1. 装置<br/>    同 design<br/>    2. 策略<br/>    同 method</p> | <p>He invented a <b>device</b> for automatically lighting a gas stove.<br/>他发明了一种自动点煤气炉的装置。</p> <p>The child's tears were a <b>device</b> to get attention.<br/>孩子的眼泪是引起注意的一种策略。</p> |
| <p><b>divine</b><br/>[dɪ'vaɪn]<br/><i>adj.</i> 神的;非凡的</p>                                              | <p>To err is human, to forgive is <b>divine</b>.<br/>犯错是人之常情,宽恕是超凡的。</p>                                                                                                             |
| <p><b>election</b><br/>[ɪ'leɪʃən]<br/><i>n.</i> 选举<br/><i>v.</i> elect<br/><i>adj.</i> elective</p>    | <p>The <b>election</b> results will be broadcast tonight.<br/>今晚将会广播选举结果。</p>                                                                                                        |
| <p><b>envy</b> [ˈenvɪ]<br/><i>n.</i> 被羡慕的东西<br/><i>adj.</i> envious</p>                                | <p>The boy's new bicycle was an object of <b>envy</b> to all his friends.<br/>那男孩的新自行车,是他所有朋友都羡慕的东西。</p>                                                                             |

|                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>expedition</b><br/>[ˌɛkspɪˈdɪʃən]<br/>n. 探险; 探险队</p>                                                                          | <p>He was a member of the Qomolangma <b>Expedition</b>.<br/>他是珠穆朗玛峰探险队的队员。</p>                                                               |
| <p><b>feature</b><br/>[ˈfi:tʃə(r)]<br/>n. 特色<br/><input type="checkbox"/> characteristic</p>                                        | <p>The main <b>features</b> of Southern California are the warm climate and the beautiful scenery.<br/>南加州的主要特色是温暖的气候及美丽的风景。</p>             |
| <p><b>folly</b> [ˈfɒli]<br/>n. 愚蠢; 愚行<br/><input type="checkbox"/> foolishness<br/><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> sagacity</p> | <p>After one year at the university he gave up his studies; it was an act of the greatest <b>folly</b>.<br/>他在那所大学学习一年后, 放弃求学, 这是最愚蠢的行为。</p> |
| <p><b>fury</b> [ˈfjuəri]<br/>n. 愤怒<br/><input type="checkbox"/> anger, rage</p>                                                     | <p>In his <b>fury</b> at being punished, he broke the teacher's favorite vase.<br/>他挨罚了, 一时愤怒将老师最心爱的花瓶打破了。</p>                               |
| <p><b>grief</b> [grɪf]<br/>n. 悲伤<br/><input type="checkbox"/> sorrow</p>                                                            | <p>She went nearly mad with <b>grief</b> after the child died.<br/>孩子死后, 她悲伤得几至疯狂。</p>                                                       |
| <p><b>hide</b> [haɪd]<br/>v. 隐藏<br/><input type="checkbox"/> conceal<br/><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> reveal</p>             | <p><b>Hide</b> it where no one else can find it.<br/>把它藏在没有人找得到的地方。</p>                                                                      |

**Exercise 15.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

- The old man smiled sadly as he remembered the \_\_\_\_\_ of his youth.
- He used a strange \_\_\_\_\_ to pick up the paper.

3. Some boys were full of \_\_\_\_\_ when they saw my new bicycle.  
 4. I \_\_\_\_\_ the broken dish behind the table yesterday.  
 5. His failure to live a good life was a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ to his parents.

【解答】 1. follies 2. device 3. envy 4. hid 5. grief

《第三部分》

**impression**

[im'preʃən]

*n.* 印象

*v.* impress

His speech made a strong *impression* on the audience.

他的演说给听众留下了很深刻的印象。

**instruct**

[in'strʌkt]

*v.* 教导

*n.* instruction

We have one teacher who *instructs* us in geography, English and history.

我们有一位老师教我们地理、英文还有历史。

**journey**

['dʒɜ:nɪ]

*n.* 旅行

Life is a long *journey* from birth to death.

人生是个从出生至死亡的漫长旅程。

**lawn** [lɔ:n]

*n.* 草地

I spent the whole afternoon mowing the *lawn* in the back yard.

我花了整个下午在后院中除草。

**lovely** ['lʌvli]

*adj.* 可爱的

She was wearing a very *lovely* dress at the party.

她在宴会上穿了一件非常可爱的衣服。

|                                                                              |                                                                                                               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>material</b><br/>[mə'tiəriəl]<br/>n. 材料<br/>☐ substance</p>            | <p>When building <i>materials</i> cost more, the price of houses increases.<br/>建筑材料涨价, 房屋价格也随之提高。</p>        |
| <p><b>mislead</b><br/>[mis'li:d]<br/>v. 欺骗<br/>pp. misled<br/>☐ misguide</p> | <p>Her appearance <i>misled</i> him; he thought she was young, but she wasn't.<br/>她的容貌骗了他, 以为她很年轻, 其实不然。</p> |
| <p><b>navy</b> ['neɪvɪ]<br/>n. 海军</p>                                        | <p>The <i>navy</i> defends the country's shores and seas.<br/>海军保卫国家的海岸和海域。</p>                               |
| <p><b>occasion</b><br/>[ə'keɪʒən]<br/>n. 场合</p>                              | <p>I wish to express my sorrow on this <i>occasion</i>.<br/>我希望能在此场合表达我的哀伤。</p>                               |
| <p><b>overcome</b><br/>[ˌəʊvə'kʌm]<br/>v. 克服<br/>☐ conquer,<br/>vanquish</p> | <p>In order to succeed, you must <i>overcome</i> any hardships.<br/>为了成功, 你必须克服任何困难。</p>                      |

**Exercise 15.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. Our guide \_\_\_\_\_ us in the woods, and we got lost.
2. He is going to make a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ around the world.
3. Rubber is a widely used \_\_\_\_\_.
4. A birthday is not a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ for tears.
5. The child was \_\_\_\_\_ by weariness and slept deeply.

【解答】 1. misled 2. journey 3. material 4. occasion  
5. overcome

## 《第四部分》

**pat**[pæt]*n.* 轻拍*v.* 轻抚 tapThe child gave the dog a **pat** on the head.

那孩子轻拍狗的头。

She **patted** her hair to be sure that it was neat.

她轻摸头发,以确定整齐。

**persuade**

[pə'sweɪd]

*v.* 说服*n.* persuasion dissuadeI know I should study, but he **persuaded** me to go to the movies.

我知道我应该念书,可是他说服我去看电影。

**portable**

['pɔ:təbl]

*adj.* 可携带的A **portable** typewriter can be easily moved from place to place.

手提打字机可轻便地到处携带。

**procedure**

[prə'si:dʒə(r)]

*n.* 程序The new secretary learned the **procedure** in the office.

新来的秘书学习了办公室内的程序。

**quality**

['kwɒlətɪ]

*n.* 质量**Quality** is more important than quantity.

质量比数量更重要。

|                                                     |                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>register</b><br/>[ˈredʒɪstə(r)]<br/>v. 登记</p> | <p>You are required to <b>register</b> before the election.<br/>选举前, 你要先登记。</p>    |
| <p><b>resent</b><br/>[rɪˈzent]<br/>v. 憎恶</p>        | <p>He strongly <b>resents</b> being called a fool.<br/>他非常憎恶被人叫作傻瓜。</p>            |
| <p><b>rod</b>[rɒd]<br/>n. 竿</p>                     | <p>She hung curtains on a <b>rod</b>.<br/>她把窗帘挂在衣竿上。</p>                           |
| <p><b>scarcity</b><br/>[ˈskæəsəti]<br/>n. 不足</p>    | <p>The <b>scarcity</b> of fruit was caused by the drought.<br/>由于干旱, 造成水果产量不足。</p> |
| <p><b>series</b>[ˈsiəri:z]<br/>n. 连续</p>            | <p>A <b>series</b> of rainy days spoiled their vacation.<br/>连日的雨天, 破坏了他们的假期。</p>  |

**Exercise 15.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ the promotion of his younger colleague to a rank above his own.
2. It took the whole afternoon to \_\_\_\_\_ his new car.
3. She wanted to buy an orange dress, but we \_\_\_\_\_ her that the blue one was more attractive.
4. He bought a \_\_\_\_\_ television for the trip.
5. An important \_\_\_\_\_ of steel is its strength.

**【解答】** 1. resented      2. register      3. persuaded  
4. portable      5. quality

## 《第五部分》

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>silly</b> ['sɪlɪ]<br><i>adj.</i> 愚蠢的                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | It's <i>silly</i> of you to trust him.<br>你相信他的话,真是愚蠢。                                                                                                                          |
| <b>social</b><br>['səʊʃəl]<br><i>adj.</i> 1. 社会的<br>2. 联谊性的<br><i>n.</i> society                                                                                                                                                                           | Juvenile delinquency is a serious <i>social</i> problem in this country.<br>少年犯罪是这个国家一个严重的社会问题。<br>It was a <i>social</i> meeting and no one discussed business. 这是联谊会,没有人讨论业务。 |
| <b>splendid</b><br>['splendɪd]<br><i>adj.</i> 堂皇的                                                                                                                                                                                                          | The rich man lives in a <i>splendid</i> house over there.<br>那有钱人住在那边一栋堂皇的房屋内。                                                                                                  |
| <b>steer</b> [stiə(r)]<br><i>n.</i> 公牛<br> ox<br><i>v.</i> 驾驶<br> guide,<br>navigate | The <i>steers</i> were fattened for market.<br>养肥公牛是为了销售。<br>We <i>steered</i> the boat toward land.<br>我们将船驶向陆地。                                                               |
| <b>substitute</b><br>['sʌbstɪtju:t]<br><i>v.</i> 代替                                                                                                                                                                                                        | We often <i>substitute</i> margarine for butter.<br>我们经常用人造奶油代替奶油。                                                                                                              |
| <b>swing</b> [swɪŋ]<br><i>v.</i> 摇摆                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | The big ape <i>swung</i> itself from branch to branch.<br>那大猩猩在树枝间荡来荡去。                                                                                                         |

|                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>thirst</b>[θɜːst]<br/>n. 口渴</p>                      | <p>The horse satisfied its <b>thirst</b> at the river.<br/>那匹马在河边痛饮解渴。</p>                                                                                                        |
| <p><b>trace</b>[treɪs]<br/>n. 踪迹<br/>v. 追溯<br/>同 track</p> | <p>The police were unable to find any <b>trace</b> of the thief.<br/>警察找不到小偷的任何踪迹。<br/>His family can <b>trace</b> its history back to the 10th century.<br/>他的家族史可追溯至 10 世纪。</p> |
| <p><b>union</b>[ˈjuːnjən]<br/>n. 联合<br/>同 combination</p>  | <p>The United States of America is a federal <b>union</b> of fifty states.<br/>美国是 50 个州的联邦。</p>                                                                                  |
| <p><b>visible</b>[ˈvɪzəbl]<br/>adj. 可见的</p>                | <p>The shore was barely <b>visible</b> through the fog.<br/>在雾中几乎看不见海岸。</p>                                                                                                       |
| <p><b>whistle</b>[ˈwɪsl]<br/>v. 吹哨</p>                     | <p>The policeman <b>whistled</b> for the automobile to stop. 警察吹哨要汽车停住。</p>                                                                                                       |

**Exercise 15.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

- Sorrow had left its \_\_\_\_\_ on his face.
- The pilot \_\_\_\_\_ the ship for the harbor in the morning.
- We \_\_\_\_\_ red balls for blue to see if the baby would notice.
- After running 5 miles we really had a \_\_\_\_\_.
- He was \_\_\_\_\_ his arms as he walked.

**【解答】** 1. traces 2. steered 3. substituted 4. thirst  
5. swinging

## 效果检测

**Exercise 15.6** 找出一个与其他三个不相关的词:

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. (A) overcome (B) contest  
(C) conquer (D) vanquish
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. (A) fury (B) anger (C) rage (D) folly
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. (A) loss (B) lack (C) rarity (D) scarcity
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. (A) foolish (B) stupid (C) ugly (D) silly
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. (A) lovely (B) attractive (C) divine (D) beautiful
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. (A) procedure (B) journey  
(C) excursion (D) travel
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. (A) mislead (B) mistake  
(C) misdirect (D) misguide
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. (A) splendid (B) brilliant  
(C) magnificent (D) substantial
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. (A) suffering (B) grief (C) offense (D) sorrow
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. (A) contest (B) competition  
(C) struggle (D) device

**【解答】** 1. B 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. C  
6. A 7. B 8. D 9. C 10. D

**Exercise 15.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词:

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. 可携带的  
(A) portable (B) divine (C) actual (D) native
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. 登记  
(A) contain (B) furnish (C) register (D) determine
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. 憎恶

- (A) contest (B) resent (C) steer (D) resign
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. 胡子  
 (A) fury (B) lawn (C) series (D) beard
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. 印象  
 (A) impression (B) feature (C) device (D) quality

**【解答】** 1. A 2. C 3. B 4. D 5. A

**Exercise 15.8** 找出一个与斜体词的意义相反的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. *sensible*  
 (A) civil (B) wise (C) critical (D) silly
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. *abundance*  
 (A) fury (B) scarcity (C) quality (D) quantity
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. *grief*  
 (A) pleasure (B) journey  
 (C) folly (D) competition
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. *dissuade*  
 (A) persuade (B) conquer (C) conceal (D) concern
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. *hidden*  
 (A) divine (B) visible (C) social (D) additional

**【解答】** 1. D 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. B

**Exercise 15.9** 完整拼出下列句中所欠缺的单词：

1. You have only considered one a \_\_\_\_\_ t of difficulty, but there are many. (方面)
2. The furniture that the store sells is known for its good q \_\_\_\_\_ y. (质量)

3. D \_\_\_\_\_ e the dose of medicine when you feel better. (减少)
4. In our city we have an e \_\_\_\_\_ n for mayor every two years. (选举)
5. They lost their way in the desert and died of t \_\_\_\_\_ t. (口渴)

【解答】 1. aspect 2. quality 3. Decrease 4. election  
5. thirst

**Exercise 15.10** 找出一个与句中斜体词的意义最接近的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. He *patted* me on the shoulder.  
(A) persuaded (B) trimmed  
(C) tapped (D) spat
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The early settlers had many difficulties to *overcome*.  
(A) perform (B) decrease  
(C) conquer (D) understand
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The police *traced* the thief to his hiding place.  
(A) searched (B) tracked  
(C) vanquished (D) located
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. They *carved* their names on the tree.  
(A) inscribed (B) described  
(C) inspired (D) wrote
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. We *steered* the boat toward the port in the south.  
(A) hid (B) swung  
(C) spied (D) guided
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. It is a *folly* to drink too much during the picnic.  
(A) puzzle (B) danger  
(C) foolishness (D) feast
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Janet is only *too critical* of Alice because she doesn't like her.

- (A) faultfinding (B) substantial  
 (C) jealous (D) negligent
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. She *hid* the toy in the drawer.  
 (A) hit (B) concealed  
 (C) disclosed (D) put
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Wet weather is a *feature* of life in Scotland.  
 (A) characteristic (B) quantity  
 (C) occasion (D) device
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. It is no use trying to argue with you when you fly into a  
*fury* over the slightest thing.  
 (A) privilege (B) journey  
 (C) rage (D) rarity

【解答】 1. C    2. C    3. B    4. A    5. D  
 6. C    7. A    8. B    9. A    10. C

## LESSON 16

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

- The teacher \_\_\_\_\_ be *stern* in the discipline of his pupils.  
(A) must not                      (B) must
- We visited a *gallery* of modern \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) art                              (B) cars
- If there is a *leak* in the roof, you will have trouble in the \_\_\_\_\_ season.  
(A) rainy                            (B) sunny
- The *mayor* is the person at the head of a \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) team                            (B) town
- He *split* the wood with \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) fire                              (B) an ax

## ◆ 解 答 ◆

1. B 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. B

## 《第一部分》

**admire**  
[əd'maɪə(r)]  
v. 喜欢; 钦佩  
n. admiration

We all **admire** a brave boy, a beautiful picture or a fine piece of work. 我们都喜欢勇敢的孩子、美丽的图画和好的作品。

|                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>assemble</b><br/>[ə'sembl]<br/>v. 集合</p>                                                              | <p>The students were <b>assembled</b> in the school hall.<br/>学生们在学校礼堂内集合。</p>                                                                                                            |
| <p><b>beast</b>[bi:st]<br/>n. 走兽</p>                                                                        | <p>Lions, bears, cows and horses are <b>beasts</b>.<br/>狮子、熊、牛和马都是走兽。</p>                                                                                                                 |
| <p><b>bravery</b><br/>['breivəri]<br/>n. 勇敢<br/>同 courage</p>                                               | <p>A young man of <b>bravery</b> saved the child from the burning house.<br/>一个勇敢的年轻人将那孩子从着火的房子中救出。</p>                                                                                   |
| <p><b>castle</b>['kɑ:sl]<br/>n. 城堡</p>                                                                      | <p>A king once lived in the mountain <b>castle</b>.<br/>从前曾有一位国王住在山上的城堡里。</p>                                                                                                             |
| <p><b>claim</b>[kleim]<br/>v. 请求</p>                                                                        | <p>Every citizen may <b>claim</b> the protection of the law. 每一位公民都可以请求法律的保护。</p>                                                                                                         |
| <p><b>conclude</b><br/>[kən'klud]<br/>v. 推断<br/>n. conclusion</p>                                           | <p>As he didn't get here at six, I <b>concluded</b> that he had been delayed.<br/>由于他 6 点还没到这儿, 我推断他被耽搁了。</p>                                                                             |
| <p><b>contract</b><br/>['kɒntrækt,<br/>kən'trækt]<br/>v. 1. 订约<br/>[kən'trækt]<br/>2. 收缩<br/>同 diminish</p> | <p>Our shop <b>contracted</b> with a local clothing firm for 100 coats a week.<br/>本店和市内的服饰店订约, 每星期购买 100 件外套。<br/><br/>Most metals <b>contract</b> when they cool.<br/>大部分的金属在冷却时收缩。</p> |

|                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>crop</b> [krɒp]<br><i>n.</i> 1. 农作物<br>2. 产量 | Wheat, corn and cotton are the three main <b>crops</b> of the United States.<br>小麦、玉米和棉花是美国的三种主要农作物。<br>The drought made the potato <b>crop</b> very small this year.<br>干旱使今年马铃薯的产量很低。 |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                  |                                                                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>deed</b> [di:d]<br><i>n.</i> 行为<br>同 behavior | Good <b>deeds</b> should be rewarded and evil <b>deeds</b> should be punished.<br>好行为应受到奖励, 坏行为应受到惩罚。 |
|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**Exercise 16.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The grandfather \_\_\_\_\_ all the members of his family for the annual meeting last week.
2. We \_\_\_\_\_ people who succeed in spite of difficulties.
3. They \_\_\_\_\_ to pay cash for the house just yesterday.
4. The injured man \_\_\_\_\_ compensation for damages at the trial yesterday.
5. His \_\_\_\_\_ do not always agree with his words.

**【解答】** 1. assembled      2. admire      3. contracted  
 4. claimed                  5. deeds

~~~~~ 《第二部分》 ~~~~~

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>devote</b> [di'vəʊt]<br><i>v.</i> 致力<br><i>n.</i> devotion | He <b>devoted</b> his efforts to the improvement of the parks in the city.<br>他致力于市区公园的改进。 |
|---|--|

**divorce**[di'vɔ:s]

*v.* 离婚

☐ separate

*n.* 离婚

He has been **divorced** for a year.

他已离婚一年。

His wife asked him for a **divorce**.

他太太要求离婚。

**elegant**[ 'elɪgənt ]

*adj.* 高雅的

The furnishings of the palace were **elegant**.

这座皇宫的装饰很高雅。

**equator**

[ɪ'kwetə(r)]

*n.* 赤道

The United States is north of the **equator**.

美国在赤道的北边。

**exist**[ɪg'zɪst]

*v.* 生存

We cannot **exist** without air, food and water.

没有空气、食物和水,我们就不能生存。

**federal**[ 'fedərəl ]

*adj.* 联邦制的

The United States has a **federal** government.

美国有一个联邦政府。

**forbid**[fə'brɪd]

*v.* 禁止

☐ prohibit

☒ permit, allow

Smoking is **forbidden** in the crowded bus.

在拥挤的公共汽车上禁止吸烟。

**gallery**[ 'gæləri ]

*n.* 画廊

Many pictures were hung on the walls of the

**gallery**. 画廊的墙上挂着许多画。

**grind**[graɪnd]

*v.* 磨

That mill **grinds** corn into meal and wheat into flour.

那家磨坊将玉米磨成玉米粉,小麦磨成面粉。

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <p><b>improve</b><br/>[im'pru:v]<br/>v. 改进<br/>n. improvement</p> | <p>She <i>improved</i> her handwriting by constant practice.<br/>她通过不断的练习来改进她的书法。</p> |
|---|---|

**Exercise 16.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The mother \_\_\_\_\_ herself to caring for her sick child last week.
2. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is an imaginary circle around the middle of the earth at an equal distance from the North and South poles.
3. What happens to the soul when it is \_\_\_\_\_ from the body?
4. In the United States foreign policy is decided by the \_\_\_\_\_ government.
5. If her father had known it, he would have \_\_\_\_\_ the marriage.

**【解答】** 1. devoted 2. equator 3. divorced 4. federal  
5. forbidden

《第三部分》

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p><b>instrument</b><br/>['instrumənt]<br/>n. 用具; 仪器</p> | <p>A doctor's <i>instruments</i> must be kept clean.<br/>医生的用具必须保持清洁。</p> |
|--|---|

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><b>junior</b><br/>['dʒu:njə(r)]<br/>adj. 下级的<br/> senior</p> | <p>This teaching course is for <i>junior</i> officers.<br/>这门教学课程是为下级军官设的。</p> |
|--|--|

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><b>leak</b>[li:k]<br/> <i>n.</i> 漏洞<br/> <i>n.</i> 漏</p>  | <p>There is a <b>leak</b> in the roof.<br/>                     屋顶上有个漏洞。<br/>                     The rain is <b>leaking</b> in through a crack in the roof. 雨正从屋顶上的缝隙漏进来。</p> |
| <p><b>lower</b>[ˈləʊə(r)]<br/> <i>v.</i> 降下</p>  | <p>We <b>lower</b> our flag usually at six o'clock.<br/>                     我们通常在 6 点降旗。</p>  |
| <p><b>mayor</b>[meɪə(r)]<br/> <i>n.</i> 市长</p>   | <p>A <b>mayor</b> is the chief government official of a city or town.<br/>                     市长是一市或一镇的主要政府官员。</p>  |
| <p><b>mistrust</b><br/>                     [misˈtrʌst]<br/> <i>v.</i> 不信任<br/>                     ☒ believe, trust</p> | <p>He keeps his money at home because he <b>mistrusts</b> banks.<br/>                     他把钱放在家里, 因为他不信任银行。</p>   |
| <p><b>neat</b>[ni:t]<br/> <i>adj.</i> 整洁的</p>  | <p>The child was taught to put away her toys and clothes to keep her room <b>neat</b>.<br/>                     那孩子被教导要将玩具和衣服收拾好, 以保持房间的整洁。</p>                                |
| <p><b>occupy</b><br/>                     [ˈɒkjʊpaɪ]<br/> <i>v.</i> 充任<br/> <i>n.</i> occupation</p>                     | <p>Mr. Smith <b>occupies</b> an important position in the Ministry of Education.<br/>                     史密斯先生在教育部担任要职。</p>   |
| <p><b>overall</b><br/>                     [ˈəʊvəɹəl]<br/> <i>adj.</i> 所有的</p>   | <p>The <b>overall</b> length of the table is six feet.<br/>                     那桌子全长 6 英尺。</p>  |

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| <b>patch</b> [pætʃ] | She sewed <b>patches</b> on the elbows of his jacket.        |
| <i>n.</i> 补丁        | 她将补丁缝在他夹克的肘弯处。   |
| <i>v.</i> 缝补        | The mother <b>patched</b> the boy's trousers.<br>母亲缝补那男孩的裤子。 |

**Exercise 16.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. A drill is one of the important \_\_\_\_\_ used by dentists.
2. There is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ in the paper bag that lets sugar run out.
3. He has thousands of books, and they \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of space.
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ will lead the town meeting about taxes.
5. Her \_\_\_\_\_ handwriting is easy to read.

**【解答】** 1. instruments 2. leak 3. occupy 4. mayor  
5. neat

《第四部分》

|                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| <b>phrase</b> [freɪz] | He spoke in simple <b>phrases</b> so that the children understood him. |
| <i>n.</i> 片语;措辞       | 他用简单的语句讲话,以便孩子们能听懂。  |

|                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| <b>portion</b><br>[ˈpɔːʃən] | His <b>portion</b> of the family property was the largest. |
| <i>n.</i> 分得的财产             | 他分得的家产最多。  |

|                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <b>procession</b><br>[prəˈseʃən] | A funeral <b>procession</b> moved along the main street. |
| <i>n.</i> 行列                     | 送葬行列沿着大街走。   |

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <p><b>quarrel</b><br/>[ˈkwɔrəl]<br/>n. 争吵</p>         | <p>We have had a <b>quarrel</b> and don't speak to each other.<br/>我们争吵过后,就不再和对方说话了。</p>   |
| <p><b>regret</b>[rɪ'gret]<br/>n. 抱歉;遗憾<br/>v. 抱歉</p>  | <p>They said goodbye with great <b>regret</b>.<br/>他们非常抱歉地说再见。<br/>I <b>regret</b> to say that I can not help you this time.<br/>我很抱歉地说,这次我帮不上你的忙。</p> |
| <p><b>reserve</b><br/>[rɪ'zɜ:v]<br/>v. 保留</p>         | <p>The seats are <b>reserved</b> for old and sick people.<br/>这些座位是留给老人和病人们坐的。</p>   |
| <p><b>role</b>[rəʊl]<br/>n. 角色<br/>同 part</p>         | <p>His <b>role</b> in that movie proved his acting ability.<br/>他在那部片中的角色是他表演能力的证明。</p>  |
| <p><b>scare</b>[skɛə(r)]<br/>v. 惊吓</p>                | <p>The sudden noise <b>scared</b> her.<br/>突然的声音吓了她一跳。</p>   |
| <p><b>serious</b>['sɪəriəs]<br/>adj. 严肃的</p>          | <p>He spoke about the problem in a <b>serious</b> way.<br/>他严肃地谈论那问题。</p>  |
| <p><b>silverware</b><br/>[ˈsɪlvəweə(r)]<br/>n. 银器</p> | <p>Her <b>silverware</b> consists of knives, forks, spoons, a waterpitcher and candlesticks.<br/>她所有的银器包括刀、叉、匙、一个水壶,还有烛台。</p>                          |

Exercise 16.4 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. They were \_\_\_\_\_ at the strange sound.
2. Raising money for our club is a \_\_\_\_\_ matter.

3. The first three rows of the hall are \_\_\_\_\_ for special guests.  
 4. The children had a \_\_\_\_\_ about the division of the candy.  
 5. The workers marched in \_\_\_\_\_ to the minister's office.

【解答】 1. scared 2. serious 3. reserved 4. quarrel  
 5. procession

《第五部分》

**sole** [səʊl]  
*adj.* 惟一的  
 single 他有钱的婶婶死后,他是惟一的财产继承人。  
 multiple  
*n.* 底部  
 The stone cut the **sole** of his foot.  
 石头割伤了他的脚底。

**split** [splɪt]  
*v.* 分配  
 The boys **split** the money into four shares.  
 男孩们将钱分成四份。

**stern** [stɜ:n]  
*adj.* 严格的  
 He is very **stern** in his students' discipline.  
 他对学生的纪律要求非常严格。

**subtract**  
 [səb'trækt]  
*v.* 减去  
**Subtract** 2 from 4, and the remainder is 2.  
 4 减 2 得 2。

**sword** [sɔ:d]  
*n.* 刀; 剑  
 Those who live by the **sword** shall perish by the **sword**.  
 那些靠刀剑吃饭的人, 终将死于刀剑之下。

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p><b>thorough</b><br/>[ˈθʌrə]<br/>adj. 彻底的<br/>同 complete</p>   | <p>You must give the horse a <b>thorough</b> cleaning every day.<br/>你必须每天替马彻底清洗。</p>   |
| <p><b>tradition</b><br/>[trəˈdɪʃən]<br/>n. 传统<br/>同 customs</p>  | <p>It is a <b>tradition</b> that women get married in longwhite dresses.<br/>女人结婚时穿白色长礼服是一种传统。</p>  |
| <p><b>unite</b><br/>[juːˈnaɪt]<br/>v. 联合</p>                     | <p>The common interests made the countries <b>u-nite</b>.<br/>共同的利益使得这些国家联合起来。</p>  |
| <p><b>vision</b>[ˈvɪʒən]<br/>n. 1. 视力<br/>同 sight<br/>2. 洞察力</p> | <p>The old man wears glasses because his <b>vision</b> is very poor.<br/>那老人因为视力太差而戴眼镜。<br/>We need a man of <b>vision</b> as president.<br/>我们需要一个有洞察力的人做会长。</p> |
| <p><b>widow</b>[ˈwɪdəʊ]<br/>n. 寡妇<br/>同 widower</p>              | <p>A <b>widow</b> is a woman whose husband had died and who has not married again.<br/>寡妇就是死了丈夫,而未再嫁的女人。</p>  |

**Exercise 16.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. According to the old \_\_\_\_\_, Romulus was the founder of Rome.
2. Our club was \_\_\_\_\_ by the argument.
3. He is a \_\_\_\_\_ scoundrel.
4. The pen is mightier than the \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Several firms were \_\_\_\_\_ to form one company.

【解答】 1. tradition 2. split 3. thorough 4. sword  
5. united

### 效果检测

**Exercise 16.6** 找出一个与斜体词的意义最接近的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. a *thorough* defeat  
(A) severe (B) complete  
(C) critical (D) hidden
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. *elegant* behavior  
(A) prompt (B) greedy  
(C) typical (D) graceful
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. to *forbid* something  
(A) order (B) allow  
(C) prohibit (D) mistrust
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. to *devote* one's life  
(A) admire (B) reserve  
(C) bother (D) dedicate
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. a good *deed*  
(A) contest (B) impression  
(C) behavior (D) feature
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. a medal for *bravery*  
(A) gallery (B) quarrel  
(C) courage (D) fighting
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. a *serious* person  
(A) thoughtful (B) attractive  
(C) silly (D) thorough

- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. a *stern* parent  
 (A) stupid (B) unique  
 (C) chilly (D) strict
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. to *esteem* someone  
 (A) envy (B) admire  
 (C) permit (D) despise
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. to *claim* something  
 (A) demand (B) assemble  
 (C) occupy (D) contract

**【解答】** 1. B    2. D    3. C    4. D    5. C  
 6. C    7. A    8. D    9. B    10. A

**Exercise 16.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. 寡妇  
 (A) bachelor (B) widow  
 (C) widower (D) virgin
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. 传统  
 (A) impression (B) procession  
 (C) expedition (D) tradition
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. 用具  
 (A) instrument (B) deed  
 (C) patch (D) sword
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. 整洁的  
 (A) neat (B) stern  
 (C) sole (D) obvious
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. 降低  
 (A) subtract (B) leak  
 (C) lower (D) fall



5. If you saw a man dressed in poor clothes, you might c \_\_\_\_\_ e  
that he had little money. (推断)

**【解答】** 1. scare      2. exist      3. improve      4. regret  
5. conclude

**Exercise 16.10** 选出最符合句意的一个单词：

1. A foreign firm has \_\_\_\_\_ to build a new railway across Africa.  
(A) contracted                      (B) assembled  
(C) subtracted                      (D) occupied
2. He hits his gentle wife like a \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) feast                              (B) victim  
(C) beast                              (D) beard
3. \_\_\_\_\_ are better than words when people are in trouble.  
(A) Defects                              (B) Visions  
(C) Phrases                              (D) Deeds
4. It is wrong to \_\_\_\_\_ yourself only to amusement.  
(A) divorce                              (B) devote  
(C) claim                              (D) esteem
5. He did not like his daughter's boyfriend and \_\_\_\_\_ her to meet him.  
(A) split                              (B) deducted  
(C) forbade                              (D) mistrusted
6. \_\_\_\_\_ is needed to try again after a defeat.  
(A) Quarrel                              (B) Folly  
(C) Bravery                              (D) Gallery
7. The wheat has been \_\_\_\_\_ down to good white flour.  
(A) assembled                              (B) forbidden  
(C) devoted                              (D) ground

8. The air conditioner soon \_\_\_\_\_ the temperature of the room.  
(A) lowered (B) improved  
(C) reserved (D) contracted
9. They \_\_\_\_\_ some of the corn to use as seed.  
(A) occupied (B) scared  
(C) reserved (D) sucked
10. She did her best to fulfil her \_\_\_\_\_ as a mother.  
(A) patience (B) role  
(C) tradition (D) crop

**【解答】** 1. A    2. C    3. D    4. B    5. C  
6. C    7. D    8. A    9. C    10. B

LESSON 17

预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. When all *assist*, the job \_\_\_\_\_ be done quickly.  
(A) can (B) can not
2. An *insult* is an act or remark which \_\_\_\_\_ another's feelings.  
(A) flatters (B) injures
3. *Clay* is used to \_\_\_\_\_ bricks or pots.  
(A) polish (B) make
4. Milk *spoils* quickly if it is not kept in a \_\_\_\_\_ place.  
(A) hot (B) cold
5. Fat ladies \_\_\_\_\_ to be *lean*.  
(A) want (B) hate

◆ 解 答 ◆

1. A 2. B 3. B 4. B 5. A

《第一部分》

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <p><b>admit</b>[əd'mɪt]</p> <p>v. 允许</p> <p>n. admittance</p> | <p>The servant opened the door and <b>admitted</b> me into the house.</p> <p>仆人打开门, 允许我进入屋内。</p> |
|---|--|

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <p><b>assist</b>[ə'sɪst]</p> <p>v. 帮忙</p> | <p>She <b>assisted</b> her mother with the housework.</p> <p>她帮着母亲做家务。</p> |
|---|--|

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p><b>behave</b><br/>[br'hɛɪv]<br/>v. 举止</p>   | <p>He has <i>behaved</i> well to his wife and children as well.<br/>他对妻儿的态度都很好。</p>   |
| <p><b>cattle</b>[ 'kætl]<br/>n. 牛</p>  | <p>The farmer raises 1,000 head of <i>cattle</i> in his farm.<br/>那农民在农场上养了1,000头牛。</p>   |
| <p><b>clay</b>[kleɪ]<br/>n. 粘土</p>   | <p><i>Clay</i> is used for making pots, dishes and bricks.<br/>粘土用来制罐子、盘子和砖头。</p>   |
| <p><b>condemn</b><br/>[kən'dem]<br/>v. 谴责<br/> censure, blame</p>               | <p>All the newspapers <i>condemned</i> the general for his speech attacking a friendly nation.<br/>将军攻击友好邻邦的演说, 受到所有报纸的谴责。</p>                              |
| <p><b>contrary</b><br/>[ 'kɒntrəri]<br/>adj., adv.<br/>相反的(地)<br/> opposite</p> | <p>If you act <i>contrary</i> to the doctor's advice, you won't get well again.<br/>如果你不听医生的劝告, 就无法再康复了。</p>  |
| <p><b>crude</b>[krud]<br/>adj. 1. 未提炼的<br/>2. 粗鲁的<br/> impolite</p>             | <p>Oil and sugar are <i>crude</i> before being prepared for use.<br/>油和糖在尚未准备使用前都是未经提炼的。<br/>His manners were <i>crude</i> at the party.<br/>他在宴会上态度粗鲁。</p> |

**defeat**[di'fi:t]

v. 打败

同 conquer

We **defeated** Lincoln High School in the baseball game yesterday.

昨天的棒球比赛,我们打败了林肯中学。

**differ**['difə(r)]

v. 不同

n. difference

同 disagree

The two brothers are like each other in appearance but **differ** widely in their tastes.

这两兄弟的外貌相像,可是嗜好却大不相同。

**Exercise 17.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The children \_\_\_\_\_ badly; their manners were bad.
2. Only 100 boys are \_\_\_\_\_ to the school every year.
3. If we had snow in summer, it would be \_\_\_\_\_ to all experience.
4. In the last class, my answer to the arithmetic problem \_\_\_\_\_ from hers.
5. He \_\_\_\_\_ the enemy and was raised to the rank of general as a reward.

**【解答】** 1. behaved      2. admitted      3. contrary

4. differed      5. defeated

《第二部分》

**doll**[dɒl]

n. 洋娃娃

My granddaughter is as pretty as a little **doll**.

我的孙女像小洋娃娃一样漂亮。

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>elementary</b><br>[elɪ'mentəri]<br><i>adj.</i> 基本的<br><i>n.</i> element | The <i>elementary</i> principles of mathematics are taught in the lower grades at school.<br>学校低年级教授数学的基本原理。  |
| <b>equip</b> [ɪ'kwɪp]<br><i>v.</i> 装备                                      | Is the ship fully <i>equipped</i> for its voyage?<br>这条船已为出航装备好了吗?  |
| <b>exhibit</b><br>[ɪg'zɪbɪt]<br><i>v.</i> 表现                               | Our men <i>exhibited</i> great bravery in the battle.<br>战争中,我方表现英勇。  |
| <b>feed</b> [fi:d]<br><i>v.</i> 喂食<br><i>pp.</i> fed                       | She always <i>feeds</i> the baby with a spoon.<br>她一向用汤匙喂婴儿。  |
| <b>force</b> [fɔ:s]<br><i>n.</i> 暴力  | The thief took the money from the old man by <i>force</i> .<br>小偷用暴力从老人身上抢走了钱。  |
| <b>gallop</b> ['gæləp]<br><i>v.</i> 疾奔<br><i>n.</i> 匆促地进行                  | The wild horse <i>galloped</i> down the hill.<br>野马疾奔下山。<br>She went through the work at a <i>gallop</i> , so it couldn't have been done very well.<br>她仓促地做完工作,因而做得不是很好。 |
| <b>grip</b> [grɪp]<br><i>v.</i> 抓住   | He <i>gripped</i> the boy by the arm.<br>他抓住男孩的手臂。  |



|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>jury</b> [ˈdʒʊəri]<br><i>n.</i> 陪审团   | The <b>jury</b> decided the man was guilty.<br>陪审团判定这人有罪。   |
| <b>lean</b> [li:n]<br><i>v.</i> 倾斜; 屈身   | He <b>leaned</b> forward to hear what she said to him.<br>他倾身向前听她说话。  |
| <i>adj.</i> 细瘦的<br> slender   | Do you see a <b>lean</b> lady walking across the street? 你看到一位瘦瘦的小姐穿过这条街吗?  |
| <b>loyal</b> [ˈlɔɪəl]<br><i>adj.</i> 忠实的   | As a <b>loyal</b> citizen, he supported his government. 作为一个忠实的公民, 他支持政府。   |
| <b>meantime</b><br>[ˈmi:n'taɪm]<br><i>n.</i> 其间; 当中时间<br> meanwhile | Her husband left at four and returned at seven, and in the <b>meantime</b> she wrote three letters.<br>她的丈夫 4 点离开, 7 点回来, 在此期间她写了 3 封信。 |
| <b>mixture</b><br>[ˈmɪkstʃə(r)]<br><i>n.</i> 混合  | Green is a <b>mixture</b> of yellow and blue.<br>绿色是黄色和蓝色的混合。   |
| <b>needle</b> [ˈni:dl]<br><i>n.</i> 针  | Mother sewed the button on my coat with <b>needle</b> and thread.<br>母亲用针线将扣子缝在我的外套上。   |
| <b>occur</b> [əˈkɜ:(r)]<br><i>v.</i> 发生  | The terrible car accident <b>occurred</b> last Friday.<br>可怕的车祸发生在上星期五。   |

**overlook** [ˌəʊvəˈlʊk] *v.* 俯视  
Our garden is **overlooked** by the neighbor's window.  
邻人的窗口可俯视我们的花园。

**path** [pɑːθ] *n.* 轨道;路程  
The moon has a regular **path** through the sky.  
月球在天空中有一定的轨道。

**Exercise 17.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Your refusal to believe my story is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ to me.
2. This tobacco is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of three different sorts.
3. It had never \_\_\_\_\_ to me to say "thanks".
4. From our house on the hillside, we can \_\_\_\_\_ the whole city.
5. Grass has grown over the \_\_\_\_\_ through the woods.

**【解答】** 1. insult      2. mixture      3. occurred  
4. overlook      5. path

《第四部分》

**physical** ['fɪzɪkəl] *adj.* 1. 自然的; 物质的  
They study the **physical** features of the earth in the science class.  
他们在科学课上研究地球的自然特征。  
2. 身体的  
The doctor's examination showed that he was in excellent **physical** condition.  
医生的检查显示,他的身体情况良好。  
 spiritual, mental

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><b>positive</b><br/>[ 'pɒzətɪv ]<br/><i>adj.</i> 确实的<br/> unquestionable</p> | <p>We have <i>positive</i> knowledge that the earth moves around the sun.<br/>我们确信地球绕着太阳转动。</p>  |
| <p><b>proclaim</b><br/>[ prə'kleɪm ]<br/><i>v.</i> 宣布<br/> announce</p>         | <p>Many former colonies have <i>proclaimed</i> their independence.<br/>许多昔日的殖民地已宣布独立。</p>  |
| <p><b>queer</b> [kwɪə(r)]<br/><i>adj.</i> 奇怪的</p>  | <p>There was something <i>queer</i> about the way he walked.<br/>他走路的方式有点奇怪。</p>   |
| <p><b>reign</b> [reɪn]<br/><i>n.</i> 统治<br/><i>v.</i> 统治<br/> rule</p>        | <p>The queen's <i>reign</i> lasted more than fifty years.<br/>女王的统治持续了 50 余年。<br/>He <i>reigned</i> over the small country for ten years.<br/>他统治那小国 10 年。</p> |
| <p><b>reside</b> [rɪ'zaɪd]<br/><i>v.</i> 1. 居住<br/>2. 存在</p>   | <p>He has <i>resided</i> abroad for over ten years.<br/>他住在国外已有 10 多年了。<br/>Her charm <i>resides</i> in her happy smile.<br/>她的魅力在于她快乐的微笑中。</p>                |
| <p><b>rooster</b><br/>[ 'ru:stə(r) ]<br/><i>n.</i> 公鸡</p>  | <p>A <i>rooster</i> was leading many hens.<br/>一只公鸡正带着许多母鸡。</p>  |

**scarf**[skɑ:f] | The girl wore a green *scarf* over her shoulders.  
*n.* 围巾 | 那女孩肩上披了一条绿色的围巾。

**servant**['sɜ:vənt] | They have two *servants*, a cook and a maid.  
*n.* 仆人 | 他们有两个仆人,一个厨子和一个侍女。

**similarity** | Their differences are more noticeable than their *similarities*.  
 [ˌsɪmɪ'lærəti] | 他们的不同处比相似处要明显得多。  
*n.* 相似

**Exercise 17.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. How much \_\_\_\_\_ is there between the two religions?
2. The ringing bells \_\_\_\_\_ the news of the birth of the prince.
3. The power to legislate \_\_\_\_\_ in the legislature.
4. A politician should be a \_\_\_\_\_ of the people.
5. The guard has \_\_\_\_\_ instructions not to admit anyone.

【解答】 1. similarity    2. proclaimed    3. resides  
 4. servant    5. positive

《第五部分》

**solemn**['sələm] | We watched the *solemn* ceremony in the church.  
*adj.* 隆重的 | 我们在教堂里观看隆重的仪式。

**spoil**[spɔɪl] | She *spoiled* the meat by burning it.  
*v.* 破坏 | 她把肉烧坏了。

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>stiff</b> [stɪf]<br><i>adj.</i> 硬的                 | Leather shoes are usually <i>stiff</i> when they are new.<br>新皮鞋通常很硬。                                    |
| <b>subway</b> ['sʌbweɪ]<br><i>n.</i> 地铁               | He always goes to work by <i>subway</i> .<br>他经常搭乘地铁上班。  |
| <b>syllable</b> ['sɪləbl̩]<br><i>n.</i> 音节            | There are two <i>syllables</i> in the word "button".<br>"button"这个词有两个音节。                                |
| <b>thread</b> [θred]<br><i>n.</i> 线                   | Nylon <i>thread</i> is stronger than cotton <i>thread</i> .<br>尼龙线比棉线结实。                                 |
| <b>trademark</b><br>['treɪdmɑ:k]<br><i>n.</i> 商标      | The registration and protection of <i>trademarks</i> are now provided for by law.<br>如今,商标的注册和保护已有了法律规定。 |
| <b>university</b><br>[ˌju:ni'vɜ:səti]<br><i>n.</i> 大学 | Several new <i>universities</i> have been built in last ten years.<br>过去10年内建了几所新的大学。                    |
| <b>vocabulary</b><br>[və'kæbjʊləri]<br><i>n.</i> 词汇   | A lot of reading will increase your <i>vocabulary</i> .<br>大量阅读能增加你的词汇量。                                 |
| <b>wilderness</b><br>['wɪldənɪs]<br><i>n.</i> 荒地      | Jesus went out into the <i>wilderness</i> to think alone.<br>耶稣走到荒地去独自思考。                                |

**Exercise 17.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. She used silk \_\_\_\_\_ in sewing her dress.
2. He gave his \_\_\_\_\_ promise to defend his country.

3. A group of travellers were lost in the \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ of science has grown tremendously in the past 20 years.
5. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ consists of several colleges, as of liberal arts, law, medicine, etc.

【解答】 1. thread            2. solemn            3. wilderness  
           4. vocabulary        5. university

### 效果检测

**Exercise 17.6** 找出一个与其他三个不相关的词：

- |       |                 |                |
|-------|-----------------|----------------|
| _____ | 1. (A) prohibit | (B) declare    |
|       | (C) announce    | (D) proclaim   |
| _____ | 2. (A) likeness | (B) similarity |
|       | (C) resemblance | (D) mixture    |
| _____ | 3. (A) hind     | (B) fore       |
|       | (C) back        | (D) rear       |
| _____ | 4. (A) power    | (B) strength   |
|       | (C) bravery     | (D) force      |
| _____ | 5. (A) admit    | (B) blame      |
|       | (C) condemn     | (D) censure    |
| _____ | 6. (A) queer    | (B) lean       |
|       | (C) unusual     | (D) strange    |
| _____ | 7. (A) grave    | (B) solemn     |
|       | (C) contrary    | (D) serious    |
| _____ | 8. (A) vanish   | (B) defeat     |
|       | (C) conquer     | (D) overcome   |

- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. (A) untreated (B) raw  
(C) crude (D) stern
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. (A) exhibit (B) differ  
(C) display (D) show

**【解答】** 1. A 2. D 3. B 4. C 5. A 6. B 7. C  
8. A 9. D 10. B

**Exercise 17.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. 侮辱  
(A) defeat (B) condemn  
(C) proclaim (D) insult
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. 大学  
(A) college (B) university  
(C) vocabulary (D) mixture
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. 相反的  
(A) contrary (B) crude  
(C) positive (D) loyal
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. 陪审团  
(A) gallop (B) clay  
(C) jury (D) mayor
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. 俯视  
(A) spoil (B) mistrust  
(C) overlook (D) regret

**【解答】** 1. D 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. C

**Exercise 17.8** 找出一个与斜体词的意义相反的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. *conceal*  
 (A) offend (B) exhibit  
 (C) reside (D) disagree
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. *difference*  
 (A) path (B) esteem  
 (C) similarity (D) courage
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. *physical*  
 (A) raw (B) stiff  
 (C) elementary (D) mental
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. *respect*  
 (A) behavior (B) insult  
 (C) proclaim (D) differ
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. *ordinary*  
 (A) queer (B) physical  
 (C) positive (D) grave
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. *servant*  
 (A) regret (B) master  
 (C) negative (D) impulse

**【解答】** 1. B 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. A 6. B

**Exercise 17.9** 完整拼出下列句中所欠缺的单词：

- The i \_\_\_\_\_ e of hunger compelled the proud man to go begging for bread. (冲动)
- Cows, bulls, steers and oxen are c \_\_\_\_\_ e. (牛)
- Will you please f \_\_\_\_\_ d my cat for me? (喂食)
- You must b \_\_\_\_\_ e well to your seniors. (举止)
- The n \_\_\_\_\_ e of the compass shows we are facing north. (针)



- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. This paint brush is too *stiff* to use.  
(A) lean (B) solemn  
(C) rigid (D) good
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. The child *exhibited* a bad temper at an early age.  
(A) concealed (B) showed  
(C) spoiled (D) conquered

**【解答】** 1. B    2. D    3. A    4. C    5. D  
6. D    7. A    8. B    9. C    10. B

## LESSON 18

## 预 备 测 验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. Water becomes *solid* when it \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) freezes                      (B) boils
2. When a person is *exhausted*, he has \_\_\_\_\_ strength left.  
(A) much                          (B) little
3. Her best *garment* is the red \_\_\_\_\_ with lace.  
(A) dress                          (B) doll
4. It was *cruel* of him to make the donkey carry such a \_\_\_\_\_ load.  
(A) heavy                          (B) light
5. This machine is \_\_\_\_\_ because of the *defects* in it.  
(A) expensive                      (B) unsafe

## ◆ 解 答 ◆

1. A 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. B

## 《第一部分》

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><b>advance</b><br/>[əd'vɑ:ns]<br/>n. 1. 前进<br/>2. 进步<br/>同 progress</p> | <p>There were so many people that our <i>advance</i> was slow.<br/>人太多, 因此我们的前进速度很慢。</p> <p>We had made great <i>advances</i> in airplane design. 我们在飞机的设计上进步很大。</p> |
|--|--|

**assure** [ə'ʃʊə(r)]  
 v. 保证  
 n. assurance  
 同 guarantee,  
 convince

The captain **assured** the passengers that there was no danger.  
 船长向乘客保证没有危险。

**biology**  
 [baɪ'ɒlədʒɪ]  
 n. 生物学

Specialists in **biology** study the origin and structure of plant and animal life.  
 生物学专家研究动植物生命的起源和构造。

**brilliant**  
 ['brɪljənt]  
 adj. 1. 辉煌的  
 2. 有才气的  
 n. brilliance

We have had a week of **brilliant** sunshine.  
 我们有一星期阳光明媚的好天气。  
 Everyone likes to hear him; he is a **brilliant** speaker. 每个人都喜欢听他说话; 他是个有才气的演说家。

**cause** [kɔ:z]  
 n. 原因  
 同 reason

The flood last month was the **cause** of much damage.  
 上个月的水灾是造成许多灾害的原因。

**colony** ['kɒləni]  
 n. 殖民地

Canada and Australia used to be British **colonies**; now they are independent.  
 加拿大和澳大利亚过去是英国的殖民地, 现在已经独立了。

**conduct**  
 ['kɒndəkt]  
 n. 行为  
 同 behavior

The children were rewarded for good **conduct** and punished for bad **conduct**.  
 孩子们因行为好而受奖励, 因行为坏而受惩罚。

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p><b>contrast</b><br/>[kən'træst]<br/>v. 比较</p>   | <p><i>Contrast</i> these foreign goods with the domestic products.<br/>把这些外国货和本国货比较一下。</p>      |
| <p><b>cruel</b>['krʊəl]<br/>adj. 残忍的<br/>n. cruelty</p>  | <p>The <i>cruel</i> master beat his slaves mercilessly with a whip.<br/>残忍的主人用鞭子无情地鞭打奴隶。</p>    |
| <p><b>defect</b>[di'fekt]<br/>n. 缺陷<br/>adj. defective<br/> shortcoming</p> | <p>The car was unsafe because of a <i>defect</i> in its construction.<br/>这部车不安全, 因为构造上有缺陷。</p> |

**Exercise 18.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The teacher \_\_\_\_\_ the hot climate of our country with the cold climate of another in the last class.
2. He is much interested in plant and animal life; he will study \_\_\_\_\_ in the university.
3. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is a country or area under the control of a distant country and settled by people from that country.
4. We tried to \_\_\_\_\_ the nervous old lady that flying in an airplane was quite safe.
5. You are old enough to know the rules of \_\_\_\_\_.

**【解答】** 1. contrasted 2. biology 3. colony 4. assure  
5. conduct

《第二部分》

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <p><b>differentiate</b><br/>[ˌdɪfə'reɪʃieɪt]<br/>v. 区分</p>              | <p>Can you <i>differentiate</i> this kind of rose from the others?<br/>你能区分这种玫瑰和其他种类的不同吗?</p>                   |
| <p><b>domestic</b><br/>[də'mestɪk]<br/>adj. 国内的</p>                     | <p>Most newspapers publish both <i>domestic</i> and foreign news.<br/>大部分报纸都刊载国内外的消息。</p>                       |
| <p><b>embrace</b><br/>[ɪm'breɪs]<br/>v. 拥抱<br/>同 hug</p>                | <p>She <i>embraced</i> the pretty baby with great affection.<br/>她深情地抱着可爱的婴儿。</p>                               |
| <p><b>error</b>['erə(r)]<br/>n. 错误<br/>同 mistake<br/>adj. erroneous</p> | <p>I failed my test because of <i>errors</i> in spelling.<br/>我因拼写错误而未通过考试。</p>                                 |
| <p><b>exhaust</b><br/>[ɪg'zɔ:st]<br/>v. 使筋疲力竭</p>                       | <p>They were almost <i>exhausted</i> when they reached the top of the mountain.<br/>他们到山顶时,几乎筋疲力竭。</p>          |
| <p><b>festival</b>['festɪvəl]<br/>n. 节日<br/>同 celebration</p>           | <p>Every year the city has a summer music <i>festival</i> in August.<br/>每年8月该市都举办夏季音乐节。</p>                    |
| <p><b>formation</b><br/>[fɔ:'meɪʃən]<br/>n. 形成<br/>同 structure</p>      | <p>School life has a great influence on the <i>formation</i> of a child's character.<br/>学校生活对孩子的个性形成有很大影响。</p> |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><b>garment</b><br/>[ 'gɑ:mənt ]<br/>n. 衣服</p>                     | <p>A new <b>garment</b> should be washed carefully.<br/>新衣服应该小心清洗。</p>   |
| -----  |  |
| <p><b>groan</b>[grəʊn]<br/>v. 呻吟<br/>同 moan<br/>n. 呻吟</p>            | <p>The wounded man lay there <b>groaning</b>, with no one to help him.<br/>伤员躺在那里呻吟着, 无人救助。<br/>We heard the <b>groans</b> of the man who had fallen off the cliff.<br/>我们听到那个从断崖上跌下来的人的呻吟声。</p> |
| -----  |  |
| <p><b>hire</b>[ 'haɪə(r) ]<br/>v. 1. 租; 雇<br/>2. 雇用<br/>同 employ</p> | <p>He <b>hired</b> a car and a man to drive it.<br/>他租了一辆车并雇了一个人来驾驶。<br/>The storekeeper <b>hired</b> a boy to deliver groceries.<br/>店主雇用一名男孩送杂货。</p>   |

**Exercise 18.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. The nation is going to have a week of \_\_\_\_\_ in honor of the king's marriage.
2. The tired horse \_\_\_\_\_ under the heavy load.
3. The government urged the people to buy \_\_\_\_\_ goods, not foreign goods.
4. The two sisters met and \_\_\_\_\_ each other.
5. The climbing up the hill in an hour completely \_\_\_\_\_ us.

**【解答】** 1. festival      2. groaned      3. domestic  
 4. embraced      5. exhausted

《第三部分》

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><b>incidental</b><br/>[ˌɪnsɪ'dentəl]<br/><i>adj.</i> 附带发生的</p>                | <p>Certain discomforts are <i>incidental</i> to the joys of camping out.<br/>享受露营的欢乐时, 难免也会有些不便之处。</p> |
| <p><b>intelligent</b><br/>[ɪn'telɪdʒənt]<br/><i>adj.</i> 聪明的</p>                 | <p>All human beings are more <i>intelligent</i> than animals.<br/>人类比动物聪明。</p>                         |
| <p><b>justice</b><br/>['dʒʌstɪs]<br/><i>n.</i> 正义; 公正</p>                        | <p>Judges should have a sense of <i>justice</i>.<br/>法官应该有正义感。</p>                                     |
| <p><b>leap</b>[li:p]<br/><i>v.</i> 跳<br/>同 jump</p>                              | <p>He <i>leaped</i> with joy at the good news.<br/>听到好消息, 他高兴得跳了起来。</p>                                |
| <p><b>luck</b>[lʌk]<br/><i>n.</i> 幸运<br/><i>adj.</i> lucky</p>                   | <p>She had <i>luck</i> to win first prize.<br/>她很幸运, 赢得了头奖。</p>  |
| <p><b>measure</b><br/>['meɪʒə(r)]<br/><i>v.</i> 测量<br/><i>n.</i> measurement</p> | <p>The tailor <i>measured</i> me for a new suit of clothes.<br/>裁缝为我量身做了一套新衣服。</p>                     |
| <p><b>mock</b>[mɒk]<br/><i>v.</i> 嘲笑</p>   | <p>The naughty boys <i>mocked</i> the blind beggar.<br/>顽皮的孩子嘲笑瞎眼的乞丐。</p>                              |

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <p><b>negative</b><br/>[ˈnegətɪv]<br/><i>adj.</i> 消极的;<br/>否定的<br/> positive</p> | <p>The unhappy man has a <i>negative</i> attitude toward life.<br/>不快乐的人对人生采取消极的态度。</p> |
|---|---|

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><b>odd</b>[ɒd]<br/><i>adj.</i> 奇特的<br/> strange,<br/>unusual</p> | <p>Life would be very dull without the <i>odd</i> adventures now and then.<br/>生活中若缺乏偶然的奇遇,将会变得非常无聊。</p> |
|--|--|

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <p><b>owe</b>[əʊ]<br/><i>v.</i> 归功于</p> | <p>He <i>owes</i> his success to good luck more than to his ability. 他的成功与其说归功于他的能力,不如说是运气。</p> |
|---|---|

**Exercise 18.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. All men should be treated with \_\_\_\_\_.
2. We \_\_\_\_\_ the room and found it was 20 feet long and 15 feet wide.
3. We must know that we \_\_\_\_\_ a great deal to our parents and teachers.
4. We must take precautions against dangers \_\_\_\_\_ to a soldier's life.
5. The sounds of a foreign language are always \_\_\_\_\_ to nonnatives.

**【解答】** 1. justice 2. measured 3. owe 4. incidental  
5. odd

《第四部分》

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p><b>patience</b><br/>[ˈpeɪʃəns]<br/>n. 耐心</p>                | <p>It needs great <i>patience</i> to teach little children.<br/>教育孩子需要很大的耐心。</p>                            |
| <p><b>physician</b><br/>[fɪˈzɪʃən]<br/>n. 医生<br/>☒ surgeon</p> | <p>The <i>physician</i> gave his sick patient some strong medicine.<br/>医生给了病人一些烈性药。</p>                    |
| <p><b>possess</b>[pəˈzes]<br/>v. 具有<br/>☒ own</p>              | <p>He didn't have much money, but he always <i>possessed</i> good health.<br/>他没有多少钱,可是他的身体一向很好。</p>        |
| <p><b>profession</b><br/>[prəˈfeʃən]<br/>n. 职业</p>             | <p>He is preparing for the teaching <i>profession</i>.<br/>他准备从事教书的行业。</p>                                  |
| <p><b>quit</b>[kwɪt]<br/>v. 停止; 辞职<br/>☒ cease, stop</p>       | <p>The doctor told his patient to <i>quit</i> smoking and drinking.<br/>医生叫病人戒掉烟酒。</p>                      |
| <p><b>reject</b><br/>[rɪˈdʒekt]<br/>v. 拒绝<br/>☒ refuse</p>     | <p>He tried to join the army but was <i>rejected</i> because of his poor health.<br/>他想当兵,可是因为身体不好而被拒绝。</p> |
| <p><b>resign</b>[rɪˈzaɪn]<br/>v. 辞职</p>                        | <p>The man <i>resigned</i> from his job because of illness.<br/>那人因病辞职。</p>                                 |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>rotten</b> [ˈrɒtən]<br><i>adj.</i> 腐烂的<br> fresh | The apples fallen on the ground will soon become <i>rotten</i> .<br>掉到地上的苹果很快就会腐烂。 |
|--|--|

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>scatter</b><br>[ˈskætə(r)]<br><i>v.</i> 散播 | The farmer <i>scattered</i> seeds on the field.<br>农夫在田里播种。 |
|---|---|

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>severe</b><br>[sɪˈviə(r)]<br><i>adj.</i> 严厉的<br> strict, cruel | The man was given a <i>severe</i> punishment for stealing.<br>那人因偷窃而受到严厉的处罚。 |
|--|--|

**Exercise 18.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The cat watched the mouse hole with great \_\_\_\_\_.
2. He was \_\_\_\_\_ from the army because of his bad eyesight.
3. There is a great social difference between business and other \_\_\_\_\_.
4. He was told to \_\_\_\_\_ ashes on the icy sidewalk.
5. She was forced to \_\_\_\_\_ her position as secretary of the club.

|   |
|---|
| <b>【解答】</b> 1. patience      2. rejected      3. professions<br>4. scatter              5. resign |
|---|

~~~~~ 《第五部分》 ~~~~~

|                                                      |                                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>sin</b> [sɪn]<br><i>n.</i> 罪恶<br><i>cf.</i> crime | Lying, stealing, dishonesty and cruelty are <i>sins</i> .<br>撒谎、偷窃、不诚实和残忍都是罪恶。 |
|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                               |                                                                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>solid</b>['sɒlɪd]<br/>adj. 固体的<br/>☐ firm<br/>n. 固体</p> | <p>When water freezes and becomes <b>solid</b>, we call it ice.<br/>水变成固体时,我们称之为冰。<br/>At what temperature does water become a <b>solid</b>? 水在多少度时变成固体?</p> |
| <p><b>spokesman</b><br/>['spəʊksmən]<br/>n. 发言人</p>           | <p>At the meeting the <b>spokesman</b> for the government gave us the President's views.<br/>政府发言人在会议上告诉我们总统的意见。</p>                                         |
| <p><b>still</b>[stɪl]<br/>adj. 寂静的</p>                        | <p>The room was <b>still</b> at the end of his speech.<br/>他的演说结束时,整个房间寂静无声。</p>                                                                             |
| <p><b>suck</b>[sʌk]<br/>v. 吸吮</p>                             | <p>The baby <b>sucked</b> milk from its mother's breast. 婴儿吸食母乳。</p>                                                                                         |
| <p><b>symbolize</b><br/>['sɪmbəlaɪz]<br/>v. 代表;象征</p>         | <p>The red color <b>symbolizes</b> danger in many countries.<br/>红色在许多国家代表危险。</p>                                                                            |
| <p><b>threat</b>[θret]<br/>n. 威胁</p>                          | <p>Your <b>threats</b> will not stop me from going.<br/>你的威胁阻止不了我走。</p>                                                                                      |
| <p><b>traffic</b>['træfɪk]<br/>n. 交通</p>                      | <p>The police control the <b>traffic</b> in large cities.<br/>警察在大城市中管理交通。</p>                                                                               |
| <p><b>volcano</b><br/>[vɒl'keɪnəʊ]<br/>n. 火山</p>              | <p>A dormant <b>volcano</b> may explode at any time.<br/>休眠的火山可能在任何时间爆发。</p>                                                                                 |
| <p><b>wipe</b>[waɪp]<br/>v. 擦</p>                             | <p>She <b>wiped</b> the dishes with a paper towel.<br/>她用纸巾擦盘子。</p>                                                                                          |

**Exercise 18.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The baby tried to \_\_\_\_\_ the orange juice through a straw.
2. That door is made of a \_\_\_\_\_ piece of wood.
3. He was the \_\_\_\_\_ for the workers in the strike against the factory owner.
4. An extinct \_\_\_\_\_ has ceased to be able to explode.
5. He asked the noisy children to be \_\_\_\_\_.

**【解答】** 1. suck 2. solid 3. spokesman 4. volcano  
 5. still

### 效果检测

**Exercise 18.6** 找出一个与斜体词的意义最接近的单词:

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. to *reject* one's suggestion  
 (A) proclaim (B) resign (C) refuse (D) overlook
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. an old *garment*  
 (A) thread (B) costume (C) patch (D) gallop
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. *groan* of a sick man  
 (A) profession (B) regret (C) outbreak (D) moan
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. *merciless* punishment  
 (A) cruel (B) odd (C) crude (D) unusual
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. *odd* behavior  
 (A) dangerous (B) contrary (C) lean (D) strange
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. my friend's *defects*  
 (A) errors (B) insults  
 (C) shortcomings (D) regrets
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. to lose one's *patience*  
 (A) justice (B) forbearance

- (C) courage (D) strength
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. to *hire* someone  
 (A) reject (B) admire (C) employ (D) hide
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. to *laugh* at one's behavior  
 (A) encourage (B) mock (C) mistrust (D) assist
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. to *own* a house  
 (A) possess (B) owe (C) hire (D) equip

**【解答】** 1. C 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. D  
 6. C 7. B 8. C 9. B 10. A

**Exercise 18.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. 行为  
 (A) threat (B) conduct (C) cause (D) error
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. 生物学  
 (A) biology (B) colony  
 (C) surgeon (D) vocabulary
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. 拥抱  
 (A) owe (B) possess (C) assure (D) embrace
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. 节日  
 (A) profession (B) volcano (C) festival (D) gallery
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. 耐心  
 (A) error (B) patience (C) bravery (D) justice

**【解答】** 1. B 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. B

**Exercise 18.8** 找出一个与斜体词的意义相反的单词:

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. *merciful*

- (A) stiff (B) incidental  
(C) cruel (D) motionless

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. *foreign*

- (A) dangerous (B) strange (C) federal (D) domestic

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. *rotten*

- (A) fresh (B) queer (C) neat (D) mild

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. *hire*

- (A) quit (B) fire (C) scatter (D) continue

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. *withdrawal*

- (A) advance (B) possess (C) exhaust (D) leap

**【解答】** 1. C 2. D 3. A 4. B 5. A

**Exercise 18.9** 完整拼出下列句中所欠缺的单词:

1. I obeyed her order but only under the t \_\_\_\_\_ t of punishment.

(威胁)

2. I don't have the p \_\_\_\_\_ e to hear your complaints again. (耐心)

3. The j \_\_\_\_\_ e of these remarks was clear to everyone. (公正)

4. If you don't like your job, you may q \_\_\_\_\_ t. (辞职)

5. There is heavy t \_\_\_\_\_ c on the street during the rush hours. (交通)

**【解答】** 1. threat 2. patience 3. justice 4. quit  
5. traffic

**Exercise 18.10** 选出最符合句意的一个单词：

1. Carelessness is often the \_\_\_\_\_ of fires.  
(A) errors (B) cause (C) threat (D) consequence
2. In the elementary school there is often a prize for good \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) conduct (B) defect (C) servant (D) threat
3. He could not \_\_\_\_\_ green color from red one.  
(A) measure (B) symbolize (C) exhibit (D) differentiate
4. The doctor \_\_\_\_\_ him that his child would recover from the illness.  
(A) refused (B) assisted (C) contrasted (D) assured
5. \_\_\_\_\_ was with us and we won easily in the baseball game.  
(A) Defect (B) Luck (C) Vision (D) Justice
6. Heat causes the \_\_\_\_\_ of steam from water.  
(A) mixture (B) scarcity (C) formation (D) profession
7. The thoughtless children \_\_\_\_\_ the speech of the new boy.  
(A) mocked (B) sucked (C) owned (D) owed
8. A dog \_\_\_\_\_ a keen sense of smell.  
(A) embraces (B) symbolizes  
(C) behaves (D) possesses
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ it to you that I am still alive.  
(A) reign (B) hire (C) owe (D) own
10. A dove \_\_\_\_\_ peace, whereas a hawk \_\_\_\_\_ war.  
(A) symbolizes (B) contrasts  
(C) assures (D) differentiates

**【解答】** 1. B 2. A 3. D 4. D 5. B  
6. C 7. A 8. D 9. C 10. A

**Exercise 18.11** 将题前的斜体词转换为适当的词性,填入空格内:

1. *error*      The facts are correct, but your conclusion is \_\_\_\_\_.
2. *brilliant*      The diamond glowed with a pure white \_\_\_\_\_.
3. *measure*      The \_\_\_\_\_ of individual intelligence is very difficult.
4. *incidental*      The \_\_\_\_\_ has been forgotten for a long time.
5. *assure*      The plumber gave us his \_\_\_\_\_ that he would fix the pipes tomorrow.

**【解答】** 1. erroneous      2. brilliance      3. measurement  
4. incident      5. assurance

LESSON 19

预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. We \_\_\_\_\_ sugar and flour at the *grocery*.  
 (A) buy (B) make
2. If someone *neglects* his duty, he gives \_\_\_\_\_ attention to it.  
 (A) much (B) little
3. A *cautious* driver never drives his car too \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) slow (B) fast
4. Food must be \_\_\_\_\_ well to be *digested* properly.  
 (A) chewed (B) cooked
5. We built a new *fort* in the south to \_\_\_\_\_ people.  
 (A) protect (B) carry

◆ 解 答 ◆

1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. A

《第一部分》

**advantage** | He had the *advantage* of being born into a rich family.  
 [əd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ] |  
 n. 便利 | 他占了出生富家之便。

**atmosphere** | Most cities no longer have a clear *atmosphere*.  
 ['ætməsfɪə(r)] | 大部分都市不再有清新的空气。  
 n. 1. 空气  
 同 air

|                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>2. 气氛</p>                                                                                                                                           | <p>There is an <i>atmosphere</i> of calm and peace in the country that is quite different from the <i>atmosphere</i> of a big city.<br/>乡间的气氛是平静而安宁的,与都市截然不同。</p>               |
| <p><b>broad</b>[brɔ:d]<br/><i>adj.</i> 广大的<br/> <i>wide</i></p>       | <p>Miss Smith, our English teacher, has <i>broad</i> experience with children.<br/>我们的英文教师史密斯小姐,对儿童有丰富的经验。</p>                                                                  |
| <p><b>cautious</b><br/>[ˈkɔ:ʃəs]<br/><i>adj.</i> 谨慎的<br/><i>n.</i> caution</p>                                                                         | <p>A <i>cautious</i> thinker does not believe things without proof.<br/>谨慎的思想家不相信未经证明的事。</p>                                                                                    |
| <p><b>color-blind</b><br/>[ˈkɒləblaɪnd]<br/><i>adj.</i> 色盲的</p>                                                                                        | <p>A <i>color-blind</i> man can't tell red from green.<br/>有色盲的人无法分辨红绿。</p>                                                                                                     |
| <p><b>conference</b><br/>[ˈkɒnfərəns]<br/><i>n.</i> 会议</p>                                                                                             | <p>Many international <i>conferences</i> have been held at Geneva.<br/>在日内瓦已举行过多次国际会议。</p>                                                                                      |
| <p><b>contribute</b><br/>[kənˈtrɪbjʊt]<br/><i>v.</i> 1. 有助于<br/>2. 捐助<br/><i>n.</i> contribution</p>                                                   | <p>Honesty and hard work <i>contribute</i> to success and to happiness.<br/>诚实和工作努力有助于成功和幸福。<br/>Each worker <i>contributed</i> a dollar to the Red Cross. 每个工人给红十字会捐献了一美元。</p> |
| <p><b>crush</b>[krʌʃ]<br/><i>v.</i> 压碎<br/> <i>smash, break</i></p> | <p>Wine is made by <i>crushing</i> grapes.<br/>酒是将葡萄压碎而制成的。</p>                                                                                                                 |

**defend**[di'fend] | When the dog attacked me, I **defended** myself  
 v. 保护 with my stick.  
 n. defense 那只狗攻击我时,我用手杖保护自己。  
 同 guard  
 反 attack

**digest**[daɪ'dʒest] | If you rest for half an hour after a meal, you  
 v. 消化 will **digest** your food more easily.  
 n. digestion 如果你饭后休息半小时,食物较容易消化。

**Exercise 19.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The director of the school is in \_\_\_\_\_ now; you can see him later.
2. It will be to your \_\_\_\_\_ to study Spanish before you visit Mexico.
3. Everyone was asked to \_\_\_\_\_ suggestion for the party.
4. His hat was \_\_\_\_\_ when the girl sat on it.
5. The fort cannot be \_\_\_\_\_ against an air attack.

【解答】 1. conference      2. advantage      3. contribute  
 4. crushed                  5. defended

《第二部分》

**dot**[dɒt] | We watched the ship until it became a mere  
 n. 点 **dot** on the horizon. 我们看着船离去,直到它在  
 同 point 海平面上成为一个小点。

**emergency** | I keep a box of tools and a fire extinguisher in  
 [ɪ'mɜ:dʒənsɪ] my car for use in an **emergency**.  
 n. 紧急 我在车中放了工具箱和灭火器,以备紧急之需。

|                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>escape</b> [ɪs'keɪp]<br><i>v.</i> 逃脱<br> flee                       | The soldier <b>escaped</b> from the enemy's prison.<br>那士兵从敌人的监狱中逃出。                                                                                                              |
| <b>executive</b><br>[ɪg'zɛkjʊtɪv]<br><i>adj.</i> 行政的                                                                                                    | The <b>executive</b> branch carries out the laws which have been made by the legislature.<br>行政部门执行由立法机关制定好的法律。                                                                   |
| <b>fetch</b> [fetʃ]<br><i>v.</i> 拿来                                                                                                                     | Please <b>fetch</b> me the dictionary from the study room.<br>请替我去阅览室把字典拿来。                                                                                                       |
| <b>fort</b> [fɔ:t]<br><i>n.</i> 炮台<br><i>v.</i> fortify<br> fortress | They decided to build a new <b>fort</b> to protect the inhabitants of that area.<br>他们决定建座新炮台,以保护该区的居民。                                                                           |
| <b>gasp</b> [gɑ:sp]<br><i>n.</i> 喘息声<br><br><i>v.</i> 喘气                                                                                                | The policeman heard the <b>gasps</b> of a boy in the smoky room.<br>救火员听到冒烟的房间里传出一个男孩的喘息声。<br>He <b>gasped</b> for air as he ran from the smoke-filled room.<br>他喘着气从烟雾弥漫的房间里跑出来。 |
| <b>grocery</b><br>['grəʊsəri]<br><i>n.</i> 食品杂货店                                                                                                        | We buy our rice at the nearest <b>grocery</b> .<br>我们在最近的一家食品杂货店里买米。                                                                                                              |
| <b>hollow</b> ['hɒləʊ]<br><i>adj.</i> 1. 中空的<br>2. 凹陷的                                                                                                  | A tube or pipe is <b>hollow</b> , and therefore not heavy. 筒或管是中空的,因而都不重。<br>A starving person has <b>hollow</b> eyes and cheeks. 挨饿的人,其双眼和两颊是凹陷的。                                |

**inclination** | Most boys have a strong *inclination* for  
 [ˌɪnklɪˈneɪʃən] | sports.  
 n. 爱好; 倾向 | 大部分男孩对运动有着强烈的喜好。

**Exercise 19.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. Please \_\_\_\_\_ me a clean handkerchief from my bedroom.
2. The President of the United States is the head of the \_\_\_\_\_ branch of the government.
3. This fire extinguisher is to be used only in a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
4. He \_\_\_\_\_ the fire in the house by jumping out of the window when he smelled smoke.
5. The horse and the rider moved further and further away until they became only a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ in the distance.

【解答】 1. fetch      2. executive      3. emergency  
 4. escaped      5. dot

《第三部分》

**intend**[ɪn'tend] | I *intended* to get up early, but forgot to set  
 v. 想, 打算 | the alarm.  
 同 mean | 我想早起, 可是忘了按闹钟。

**keen**[ki:n] | Be careful with that knife. It's got a *keen*  
 adj. 1. 锐利的 | edge.  
 同 sharp | 小心那把刀子, 它的刃很锋利。  
 2. 尖刻的 | Like a knife, a woman's tongue is very *keen*.  
 女人的舌头像刀子一样, 非常尖刻。

|                                                                       |                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>leather</b><br/>[ˈleðə(r)]<br/>n. 皮革</p>                        | <p>His shoes are made of <i>leather</i> imported from England.<br/>他的鞋子是用英国进口的皮革制成的。</p>               |
| <p><b>lumber</b><br/>[ˈlʌmbə(r)]<br/>n. 木材</p>                        | <p>They bought some <i>lumber</i> to make their fence.<br/>他们买了些木材造篱笆。</p>                             |
| <p><b>mechanic</b><br/>[miˈkænik]<br/>n. 机械工</p>                      | <p>The automobile <i>mechanic</i> repaired my car.<br/>汽车机械工修理我的车。</p>                                 |
| <p><b>mode</b>[məʊd]<br/>n. 方式</p>                                    | <p>He suddenly became wealthy, which changed his <i>mode</i> of life.<br/>暴富改变了他的生活方式。</p>             |
| <p><b>neglect</b>[niˈglect]<br/>v. 疏忽<br/>同 disregard,<br/>ignore</p> | <p>Don't <i>neglect</i> writing to your parents at least once a month.<br/>不要疏忽了给你的父母写信, 一个月至少写一次。</p> |
| <p><b>offend</b>[əˈfend]<br/>v. 触怒<br/>同 insult</p>                   | <p>My friend was <i>offended</i> by the reporter's questions.<br/>我的朋友被记者的问题触怒了。</p>                   |
| <p><b>owl</b>[aʊl]<br/>n. 猫头鹰</p>                                     | <p>Most <i>owls</i> hunt at night and live on small animals.<br/>大多数猫头鹰夜间猎食, 并以小动物为食。</p>              |
| <p><b>pause</b>[pəʊz]<br/>n. 中止; 停顿<br/>同 stop</p>                    | <p>During the radio program there were several <i>pauses</i> for advertisements.<br/>广播节目因广告而中断数次。</p> |

v. 踌躇 | The dog *paused* for a moment when I called him. 当我叫那只狗时,它踌躇了一会儿。

**Exercise 19.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. A typewriter \_\_\_\_\_ is skilled in repairing typewriters.
2. After a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ for lunch, the man returned to work.
3. What I \_\_\_\_\_ is to finish this work before I go to bed.
4. She is wearing a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ belt.
5. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ cleaning your shoes when you go out.

【解答】 1. mechanic 2. pause 3. intend 4. leather  
5. neglect

《第四部分》

**pickpocket** | Most *pickpockets* usually work in crowds of people.  
[ 'pɪkpɒkɪt ]  
n. 扒手 | 多数扒手通常在人群中下手。

**pot**[pɒt] | Chinese usually keep soy sauce in a *pot*.  
n. 瓶; 壶 | 中国人通常将酱油装在瓶中。  
同 jug

**profit**[ 'prɒfɪt ] | This company makes great *profits* from manufacturing automobiles.  
n. 利润 | 这家公司从生产汽车中获得大量利润。  
adj. profitable

**quiver**[ 'kwɪvə(r) ] | Her lips *quivered* like those of a child about to cry.  
v. 颤抖 | 她的双唇颤抖着,如同要哭的孩子一般。  
同 shake, vibrate

**rejoice**[ri'dʒɔɪs] | They *rejoiced* when they heard she was safe.  
*v.* 高兴 | 他们听到她安全时,感到高兴。

**resist**[ri'zɪst] | The troops were no longer able to *resist* the enemy attack.  
*v.* 抵抗 | 军队再也抵抗不住敌人的攻击。  
 同 oppose

**rough**[rʌf] | The wall was made of *rough* stones.  
*adj.* 粗的 | 此墙为粗石所造。

**scent**[sent] | The hunting dogs followed the *scent* of the fox.  
*n.* 气味 | 猎犬跟随狐狸的气味追踪。  
 同 odor | A dog *scented* along the ground.  
*v.* 闻出 | 狗闻着地上的气味前进。

**sew**[səʊ] | The doctor *sewed* up the soldier's wound.  
*v.* 缝 | 医生缝好那士兵的伤口。

**sink**[sɪŋk] | The sun is *sinking* in the west.  
*v.* 下沉 | 太阳正从西边落下。  
 同 float | She washed the dishes in the *sink*.  
*n.* 水槽 | 她在水槽中洗盘子。

**Exercise 19.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The ship was filled with water and it \_\_\_\_\_ at last.
2. There is some water at the bottom of the \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ in this business are not large.
4. The mother \_\_\_\_\_ over her son's success.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ road made the car shake.

【解答】 1. sank 2. pot 3. profits 4. rejoiced  
5. rough

《第五部分》

**solution** That problem was very hard; it took many  
[sə'lu:ʃən] hours to get its **solution**.  
n. 解答 那个问题非常难, 要花许多小时才能得到解答。  
☐ answer

**spot**[spɒt] She has a paint **spot** on her white dress.  
n. 1. 污点 她的白衣服上有个油漆污点。  
2. 地点 They are building their house at a beautiful **spot**.  
他们在一个优美的地点建造房子。

**sting**[stɪŋ] Be careful, or the bee will **sting** you.  
v. 螫; 刺 小心! 否则蜜蜂会螫你。  
n. 刺; 螫 A bee has its **sting** in the tail.  
蜜蜂尾上有刺。

**suffer**['sʌfə(r)] During the war many people **suffered** from  
v. 遭受; 受苦 hunger. 战争中, 许多人遭受饥饿之苦。

**sympathy** We feel **sympathy** for a person who is ill.  
[ˈsɪmpəθɪ] 我们同情生病的人。  
n. 同情

**thrill**[θrɪl] She felt a **thrill** when she was kissed by a  
n. 兴奋 handsome pop star. 当一个受欢迎的英俊男星亲  
吻她时, 她感到一阵兴奋。

*v.* 兴奋 | She was **thrilled** with delight when the actor winked at her.  
当男演员向她眨眼时,她因喜悦而感到兴奋。

**tragic** | There was a **tragic** accident on the highway yesterday.  
[ 'trædʒɪk ]  
*adj.* 悲惨的 | 昨天高速公路上发生一起悲惨的车祸。  
*n.* tragedy

**up-to-date** | The hotel is furnished with **up-to-date** furniture.  
[ 'ʌptə'deɪt ]  
*adj.* 最新的 | 这家旅馆具备最新式的家具。

**volume** | Our school has a library of 100,000 **volumes**.  
[ 'vɒljʊ:m ] | 我们学校拥有一所藏书 10 万册的图书馆。  
*n.* 1. 书本  
2. 容积 | The storeroom has a **volume** of 4,000 cubic feet. 这储藏室的容积是 4,000 立方英尺。

**wil(l)ful** | The **wilful** child would not listen to whatever you say.  
[ 'wɪlfʊl ]  
*adj.* 1. 任性的 | 任性的孩子不管你说什么,他都不听。  
 stubborn  
2. 故意的 | The police think that it was a **wilful** murder.  
 intended | 警方认为那是蓄意谋杀。

**Exercise 19.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. We arrived at the very \_\_\_\_\_ where he was killed.
2. A bee \_\_\_\_\_ me on the neck when I was walking along the country road.
3. She was very generous to him, but she \_\_\_\_\_ for it when he ran

away with all her money.

4. They expressed their \_\_\_\_\_ by sending flowers to her husband's funeral.
5. You can find what you want to know in the ninth \_\_\_\_\_ of the encyclopedia.

**【解答】** 1. spot 2. stung 3. suffered 4. sympathy  
5. volume

### 效果检测

**Exercise 19.6** 找出一个与其他三个不相关的词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. (A) ignore (B) neglect (C) disregard (D) suffer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. (A) crush (B) spoil (C) smash (D) break
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. (A) blind (B) void (C) hollow (D) empty
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. (A) sharp (B) acute (C) narrow (D) keen
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. (A) method (B) fashion (C) principal (D) mode
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. (A) fragrance (B) odor  
(C) scent (D) atmosphere
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. (A) mean (B) escape (C) intend (D) plan
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. (A) sting (B) pierce (C) resist (D) prick
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. (A) solution (B) advantage  
(C) gain (D) benefit
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. (A) quiver (B) vibrate (C) fetch (D) shake

**【解答】** 1. D 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. C  
6. D 7. B 8. C 9. A 10. C

**Exercise 19.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词:

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. 拿来  
(A) crush (B) pause (C) gasp (D) fetch
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. 同情  
(A) mode (B) scent  
(C) sympathy (D) atmosphere
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. 喘息  
(A) gasp (B) quiver (C) rejoice (D) suck
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. 食品杂货店  
(A) garment (B) grocery  
(C) colony (D) conference
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. 消化  
(A) mock (B) sew (C) digest (D) suck

**【解答】** 1. D 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. C

**Exercise 19.8** 找出一个与斜体词的意义相反的单词:

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. *dull*  
(A) severe (B) keen (C) solid (D) careful
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. *obey*  
(A) defend (B) escape (C) rejoice (D) resist
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. *attack*  
(A) defend (B) contribute  
(C) scatter (D) suffer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. *float*  
(A) neglect (B) appose (C) sink (D) leap
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. *smooth*  
(A) stubborn (B) rough (C) sharp (D) cruel

【解答】 1. B 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. B

**Exercise 19.9** 完整拼出下列句中所欠缺的单词：

1. I should r \_\_\_\_\_ e to see you married to a good man. (高兴)
2. Plenty of fresh air can c \_\_\_\_\_ e to good health. (有助于)
3. It gave her quite a t \_\_\_\_\_ l to shake hands with the Princess.  
(兴奋)
4. Don't n \_\_\_\_\_ t to lock the door when you leave. (忽略)
5. I've made a mistake, though I didn't i \_\_\_\_\_ d to. (打算)

【解答】 1. rejoice 2. contribute 3. thrill 4. neglect  
5. intend

**Exercise 19.10** 找出一个与句中斜体词的意义最接近的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The duty of a soldier is to *defend* his country.  
(A) resist (B) assure (C) guard (D) contribute
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. He has a red *spot* on his gown.  
(A) stain (B) belt (C) pot (D) defect
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. You always follow your own *inclinations* instead of thinking of our feelings.  
(A) conducts (B) profits  
(C) occupations (D) dispositions
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Many teachers don't like to use *up-to-date* textbooks in their classes.  
(A) odd (B) modern (C) old (D) interesting
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. We should be *cautious* in crossing a crowded street.  
(A) careful (B) intelligent

- (C) quiet (D) weary
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. The tree fell on the roof of a car and *crushed* it.  
(A) exploded (B) smashed  
(C) fetched (D) touched
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. He *paused* for a moment, then continued speaking.  
(A) sat (B) stood (C) shook (D) stopped
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. I *quivered* with fear at the strange sound.  
(A) shook (B) escaped (C) stung (D) suffered
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. The room was filled with the *scent* of flowers.  
(A) atmosphere (B) pot  
(C) feature (D) odor
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. The senator was *offended* by the reporter's silly questions.  
(A) insulted (B) rejoiced (C) rejected (D) defended

**【解答】** 1. C    2. A    3. D    4. B    5. A  
6. B    7. D    8. A    9. D    10. A

LESSON 20

预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. At last they *ceased* their quarrel, in other words, they \_\_\_\_\_ their quarrel.  
 (A) began (B) stopped
2. A man of *dignity* has a \_\_\_\_\_ character.  
 (A) noble (B) dishonorable
3. Man has *lungs* for \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) digestion (B) breathing
4. This wood is too \_\_\_\_\_ to *kindle*.  
 (A) wet (B) dry
5. They *paved* the road with \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) concrete (B) bicycles

◆ 解 答 ◆

1. B 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. A

《第一部分》

|                                                      |                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>adventure</b><br/>[əd'ventʃə(r)]<br/>n. 冒险</p> | <p>A flight in an airplane is no longer such an <b>ad-venture</b> as it used to be.<br/>坐飞机不再像过去一样是项冒险。</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                        |                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>attach</b>[ə'tætʃ]<br/>v. 贴上</p> | <p>He <b>attached</b> a stamp on the envelope.<br/>他将邮票贴在信封上。</p> |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>bitter</b> [ 'bitə(r) ]<br><i>adj.</i> 苦的                                                             | Good medicine tastes <b>bitter</b> to the mouth.<br>良药苦口。                                                                                                                      |
| <b>broadcast</b><br>[ 'brɔ:dkɑ:st ]<br><i>v.</i> 广播                                                      | The President's speech was <b>broadcast</b> on radio and television all over the country.<br>总统的演说经由收音机和电视向全国播放。                                                               |
| <b>cease</b> [ si:s ]<br><i>v.</i> 停止<br>同 quit, stop                                                    | They <b>ceased</b> their work for a few minutes to take a rest.<br>他们停止工作几分钟,以便休息一下。                                                                                           |
| <b>combine</b><br>[ kəm'baɪn ]<br><i>v.</i> 1. 联合<br>同 separate, split<br>2. 化合<br><i>n.</i> combination | The two countries <b>combined</b> their efforts against their enemy.<br>这两国联合力量以抵抗敌人。<br>Chemists <b>combine</b> different elements to form new compounds.<br>化学家将不同的元素化合成化合物。 |
| <b>confess</b><br>[ kən'fes ]<br><i>v.</i> 承认                                                            | He <b>confessed</b> that he had done wrong.<br>他承认做错了。                                                                                                                         |
| <b>converse</b><br>[ kən'vɜ:s ]<br><i>v.</i> 谈话<br><i>n.</i> conversation                                | I'd like to <b>converse</b> with my friends about interesting subjects.<br>我喜欢和朋友谈论有趣的话题。                                                                                      |
| <b>cultivate</b><br>[ 'kʌltɪveɪt ]<br><i>v.</i> 耕作                                                       | The farmer <b>cultivated</b> his fields just before planting time.<br>在种植前,农民先要耕地。                                                                                             |

**delay** [di'leɪ] | The train was **delayed** because of heavy snow.  
*v.* 延误 | 火车因大雪而延误。  
 同 postpone

**Exercise 20.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The music \_\_\_\_\_ suddenly when she turned off the radio.
2. It was a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ disappointment to him when he failed his examination.
3. Jean \_\_\_\_\_ that she had eaten all the cakes.
4. The accident last night \_\_\_\_\_ the train for two hours.
5. After a year of studying at the university, I feel that I can \_\_\_\_\_ with anyone about anything.

【解答】 1. ceased 2. bitter 3. confessed 4. delayed  
 5. converse

《第二部分》

**dignity** [ˈdɪɡnəti] | A man's **dignity** depends not on his wealth but on what he is.  
*n.* 高尚 | 一个人高尚与否不在于他的财富,而在于他的品格。

**doubt** [daʊt] | All his **doubt** and uncertainty made him unhappy.  
*n.* 疑虑 | 这一切的疑虑不决使他很不快乐。

**emotion** [ɪ'məʊʃən] | Love, hate, joy and fear are **emotions**.  
*n.* 情感 | 爱、恨、喜、惧都是情感。

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>establish</b><br/>[ɪs'tæblɪʃ]<br/>v. 建造<br/> found</p>                                                                                          | <p>The university was <b>established</b> in 1850 by the government.<br/>这所大学是由政府在 1850 年建造的。</p>                                                                                |
| <p><b>excuse</b><br/>[ɪks'kju:z]<br/>v. 原谅<br/> pardon, forgive</p>                                                                                   | <p>Please <b>excuse</b> me for opening your letter by mistake.<br/>请原谅我错拆了你的信。</p>                                                                                              |
| <p><b>fiber</b> ['faɪbə(r)]<br/>n. 纤维</p>                                                                                                                                                                                              | <p>Nylon is one of the most popular man-made <b>fibers</b>.<br/>尼龙是最受欢迎的人造纤维之一。</p>                                                                                             |
| <p><b>forthright</b><br/>['fɔ:θraɪt]<br/>adj. 直率的<br/> frank</p>                                                                                    | <p>His <b>forthright</b> behavior shows that he is honest, but he seems rude to some people.<br/>他直率的态度说明他是诚实的,可是对于有些人来说,他是不礼貌的。</p>                                            |
| <p><b>gay</b> [geɪ]<br/>adj. 快乐的<br/> merry<br/> gloomy, sad</p> | <p>We were all <b>gay</b> at the thought of coming holidays.<br/>我们一想到即将来临的假期,都很快乐。</p>                                                                                         |
| <p><b>guarantee</b><br/>[ˌɡærən'ti:]<br/>n. 保证<br/>v. 保证<br/> warrant</p>                                                                           | <p>We have a one-year <b>guarantee</b> on our new car.<br/>我们的新车有一年的保证期。<br/>The merchant <b>guaranteed</b> that the color of the material would not fade.<br/>商人保证那质料不会褪色。</p> |

**holy** [ˈhəʊli] | Jerusalem and Mecca are **holy** cities.  
*adj.* 神圣的 | 耶路撒冷和麦加是圣城。

**Exercise 20.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The speaker did not like the plan and made \_\_\_\_\_ objection to it.
2. The young people were \_\_\_\_\_ as they prepared the hall for a dance party.
3. Don't be anxious; he will come without \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I can offer my house and land as a \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The *Bible* and the *Koran* are \_\_\_\_\_ writings.

【解答】 1. forthright 2. gay 3. doubt 4. guarantee  
 5. holy

《第三部分》

**income** | The government tax on **income** is called **in-**  
 [ˈɪnkəm] **come** tax.  
*n.* 收入 | 政府对于收入所征收的税,称为所得税。  
 expenditure

**interest** | His two great **interests** in life are music and  
 [ˈɪntrɪst] painting.  
*n.* 爱好;兴趣 | 他一生有两大爱好:音乐和绘画。

**kindle** [ˈkɪndl] | We tried to **kindle** the wood but it was wet  
*v.* 燃烧 | and wouldn't **kindle** easily.  
 我们想点燃木头,可是木头太湿不容易着火。

|                                                   |                                                                                          |
|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>legal</b> [ 'li:gəl ]<br><i>adj.</i> 合法的       | Hunting is <b>legal</b> only in certain seasons.<br>打猎只有在某些季节才是合法的。                      |
| <b>lung</b> [ lʌŋ ]<br><i>n.</i> 肺                | That opera singer has good <b>lungs</b> .<br>那个歌剧演员声音宏亮。                                 |
| <b>medium</b> [ 'mi:diəm ]<br><i>n.</i> 媒体        | Television can be a <b>medium</b> for giving information and opinions.<br>电视是传播信息和意见的媒体。 |
| <b>moderate</b> [ 'mɒdərət ]<br><i>adj.</i> 一般的   | It is a large house, but the garden is of <b>moderate</b> size.<br>那是一栋大房子,可是花园却只有一般大小。  |
| <b>neighborhood</b> [ 'neɪbəhʊd ]<br><i>n.</i> 附近 | She lives in the <b>neighborhood</b> of the mill.<br>她住在磨坊附近。                            |
| <b>odor</b> [ 'əʊdə(r) ]<br><i>n.</i> 气味          | Water has neither <b>odor</b> nor color.<br>水无色无味。                                       |
| <b>pace</b> [ peɪs ]<br><i>n.</i> 步调              | The old man can walk only at a low <b>pace</b> .<br>那老人只能缓步行走。                           |

**Exercise 20.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The whole \_\_\_\_\_ came to her birthday party.
2. The spark \_\_\_\_\_ the dry wood so we could make fire.
3. He has a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ in collecting stamps.
4. There was a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of roses in the air.
5. At the time of the accident, the car was running at a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ speed.

- 【解答】 1. neighborhood 2. kindled 3. interest  
4. odor 5. moderate

《第四部分》

**pave** [peɪv] Today most roads are *paved* with asphalt.  
v. 铺 今天, 大部分的道路都铺有柏油。

**picturesque** There was a *picturesque* old mill at the foot of  
[ˌpɪktʃə'resk] the mountain.  
adj. 如画的 山脚下有个如画般的老磨坊。

**pour** [pɔ:(r)] She *poured* milk from the bottle into the glass-  
v. 倒 es.  
她将牛奶从瓶子里倒入杯中。

**progress** He is showing rapid *progress* in his studies.  
['prəʊgres] 他的学业正在迅速地提高。

[prə'gres] His work is *progressing* smoothly as we ex-  
v. 进展 pected.  
如我们所预期的, 他的工作正在顺利地进展。

**quote** [kwəʊt] The judge *quoted* various cases in support of  
v. 引证 his opinion.  
那法官引证许多不同的案例来支持他的意见。

**relate** [rɪ'leɪt] We listened as he *related* his adventure.  
v. 1. 叙述 我们听他叙述他的奇遇。

|                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2. 连接                                                                                                                                       | It is difficult to <b>relate</b> these results to her mistake.<br>要将这些结果和她的错误联系起来是困难的。                                                    |
| <b>resolve</b> [ri'zɒlv]<br>v. 决定<br> decide,<br>determine | He <b>resolved</b> to do better work in the future.<br>他决定以后要更努力地工作。                                                                      |
| <b>royal</b> [ 'rɔɪəl]<br>adj. 皇家的                                                                                                          | The nobleman is a man of the <b>royal</b> family.<br>那贵族是皇室成员。                                                                            |
| <b>scheme</b> [ski:m]<br>n. 计划<br>v. 图谋                                                                                                     | Their <b>scheme</b> of building the road has failed.<br>他们筑路的计划已失败。<br>They <b>schemed</b> for the overthrow of the government. 他们图谋推翻政府。 |
| <b>situate</b> [ 'sɪtʃueɪt]<br>v. 位于                                                                                                        | The city is <b>situated</b> by the river.<br>该市位于河边。                                                                                      |

**Exercise 20.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

- The building of the new school \_\_\_\_\_ quickly during the last summer.
- The discovery of electricity \_\_\_\_\_ the way for many inventions.
- Many people \_\_\_\_\_ to quit smoking and never do.
- He tried to \_\_\_\_\_ from the *Bible* to support his beliefs.
- The firehouse is so \_\_\_\_\_ that the fireman can easily reach all parts of the town.

【解答】 1. progressed 2. paved 3. resolve 4. quote  
5. situated

《第五部分》

|                                                            |                                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>somewhat</b><br/>['sʌmwɒt]<br/><i>adv.</i> 有几分</p>   | <p>I was <i>somewhat</i> surprised to hear the bad news.<br/>我听到那坏消息,有点吃惊。</p>   |
| <p><b>spray</b>[spreɪ]<br/><i>v.</i> 喷上</p>                | <p>Jane was <i>spraying</i> green paint on the wall.<br/>简正在将绿漆喷在墙上。</p>         |
| <p><b>stir</b>[stɜ:(r)]<br/><i>v.</i> 搅动</p>               | <p>She <i>stirred</i> her coffee with a teaspoon.<br/>她用汤匙搅咖啡。</p>               |
| <p><b>suitable</b><br/>['sju:təbl]<br/><i>adj.</i> 适合的</p> | <p>The park is a <i>suitable</i> place for a picnic.<br/>这公园是个适合野餐的地方。</p>       |
| <p><b>tale</b>[teɪl]<br/><i>n.</i> 故事<br/>同 story</p>      | <p>Father likes to tell us <i>tales</i> of his boyhood.<br/>父亲喜欢告诉我们他少年时的故事。</p> |
| <p><b>throat</b>[θrəʊt]<br/><i>n.</i> 喉咙</p>               | <p>The murderer cut the old man's <i>throat</i>.<br/>凶手割断了老人的喉咙。</p>             |
| <p><b>tramp</b>[træmp]<br/><i>v.</i> 1. 行走</p>             | <p>The soldiers <i>tramped</i> along the street.<br/>士兵沿着街道行走。</p>               |

2. 践踏 | Someone *tramped* on my toes on the crowded bus.  
拥挤的车上,有人踩了我的脚趾。

**urge**[ɜ:dʒ] | Hunger *urged* him to steal a piece of bread.  
*v.* 促使 | 饥饿促使他偷了一片面包。

**vow**[vaʊ] | All the men made a *vow* of loyalty to their leader.  
*n.* 誓言 | 所有的人都立了誓言效忠领袖。  
*v.* 立誓 | They *vowed* vengeance against the oppressor.  
他们发誓向暴君复仇。

**witch**[wɪtʃ] | It was thought that *witches* generally used their power to do evil.  
*n.* 巫婆 | 一般认为,巫婆通常都使用她们的力量做坏事。

**Exercise 20.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Choose the most \_\_\_\_\_ word for the blank in the sentence.
2. We have arrived \_\_\_\_\_ late, I'm afraid.
3. He was \_\_\_\_\_ by the doctor to rest more.
4. On returning from the war, he told us \_\_\_\_\_ of fear and sadness.
5. She felt so homesick that she \_\_\_\_\_ never to leave home again when she was back home.

【解答】 1. suitable 2. somewhat 3. urged 4. tales  
5. vowed

## 效果检测

**Exercise 20.6** 找出一个与斜体词的意义最接近的单词:

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. to *cite* the **Bible**  
 (A) read (B) attack (C) cover (D) quote
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. an unpleasant *odor*  
 (A) procedure (B) emotion  
 (C) smell (D) stain
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. a *vow* of loyalty  
 (A) oath (B) plan (C) break (D) doubt
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. to *cease* doing something  
 (A) begin (B) quit (C) start (D) delay
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. to *converse* with someone  
 (A) fight (B) talk (C) contract (D) rejoice
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. to *establish* a school  
 (A) found (B) mistrust (C) destroy (D) guarantee
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. to *delay* something  
 (A) defend (B) decide (C) claim (D) postpone
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. *forthright* behavior  
 (A) stubborn (B) cruel  
 (C) candid (D) merry
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. a *holy* cup  
 (A) strange (B) sacred (C) hollow (D) solid
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. in the *neighborhood*  
 (A) place (B) medium (C) wood (D) vicinity

**【解答】** 1. D    2. C    3. A    4. B    5. B  
 6. A    7. D    8. C    9. B    10. D

**Exercise 20.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词:

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. 承认  
(A) confess (B) converse (C) relate (D) forgive
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. 合法的  
(A) royal (B) executive (C) legal (D) incidental
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. 气味  
(A) sorrow (B) anger (C) odor (D) emotion
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. 决定  
(A) quote (B) resolve (C) defer (D) resist
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. 快乐的  
(A) gay (B) dull (C) gloomy (D) acute

**【解答】** 1. A 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. A

**Exercise 20.8** 找出一个与斜体词的意义相反的单词:

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. *continue*  
(A) combine (B) pour (C) cease (D) contribute
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. *boredom*  
(A) reason (B) interest (C) progress (D) dignity
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. *moderate*  
(A) hollow (B) legal (C) cautious (D) excessive
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. *attach*  
(A) detach (B) confess (C) urge (D) resolve
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. *gloomy*  
(A) extreme (B) gay (C) keen (D) forthright

**【解答】** 1. C 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. B

**Exercise 20.9** 完整拼出下列句中所欠缺的单词：

1. A person's yearly i \_\_\_\_\_ e is all the money that he gets in a year. (收入)
2. He has a s \_\_\_\_\_ e for extracting gold from sea water. (计划)
3. Will you p \_\_\_\_\_ r me a cup of tea, please? (倒)
4. The newspaper is an advertising m \_\_\_\_\_ m. (媒体)
5. I have no i \_\_\_\_\_ t in politics. (兴趣)

**【解答】** 1. income 2. scheme 3. pour 4. medium  
5. interest

**Exercise 20.10** 选出最符合句意的一个单词：

1. The thief \_\_\_\_\_ to the police that he had stolen the money.  
(A) offended (B) ceased (C) confessed (D) contributed
2. I have no \_\_\_\_\_ that you will pass the examination.  
(A) fiber (B) doubt (C) mode (D) sympathy
3. The trip to Alaska was quite a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ for her.  
(A) spot (B) mode (C) adventure (D) medium
4. A deaf and blind man shows \_\_\_\_\_ by facial expressions and gestures.  
(A) adventure (B) grocery (C) profession (D) emotions
5. Soldiers usually have to bear \_\_\_\_\_ hardship during the war.  
(A) queer (B) royal (C) gay (D) bitter
6. We will \_\_\_\_\_ the party for a week and hold it next Saturday.  
(A) advance (B) differ (C) delay (D) forgive
7. This clock is \_\_\_\_\_ for one year.  
(A) urged (B) situated (C) determined (D) guaranteed
8. Prices in this hotel are \_\_\_\_\_, not high at all.

- (A) moderate (B) broad (C) excessive (D) bitter
9. There is some beautiful scenery in our \_\_\_\_\_.
- (A) atmosphere (B) neighborhood  
(C) fashion (D) scheme
10. He \_\_\_\_\_ this sentence from a speech by the President.
- (A) invented (B) attached (C) quoted (D) symbolized

**【解答】** 1. C 2. B 3. C 4. D 5. D  
6. C 7. D 8. A 9. B 10. C

**Exercise 20.11** 将题前的斜体词转换为适当的词性, 填入空格内:

1. *combine* The \_\_\_\_\_ of yellow and blue forms green.
2. *situate* The store is in an ideal \_\_\_\_\_ to draw tourists.
3. *confess* The thief's \_\_\_\_\_ of guilt closed the case.
4. *relate* There is no \_\_\_\_\_ between the nations.
5. *converse* He had a long telephone \_\_\_\_\_.

**【解答】** 1. combination 2. situation 3. confession  
4. relation 5. conversation

LESSON 21

预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. We could see the *dim* outline of buildings \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) in the dark                      (B) in the bright daylight
2. The *kite* has \_\_\_\_\_ to maintain its balance.  
 (A) two legs                          (B) a tail
3. A \_\_\_\_\_ man doesn't have much *leisure*.  
 (A) free                                  (B) busy
4. A *blacksmith* makes and repairs things made of \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) iron                                  (B) wood
5. The ice on the road *melted* in the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (A) cold                                  (B) sunshine

◆ 解 答 ◆

1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. B

《第一部分》

|                                                                                      |                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>advertise</b><br/>                 ['ædvətəɪz]<br/>                 v. 登广告</p> | <p>They <b>advertised</b> in the newspaper that they had a used car for sale.<br/>                 他们在报上登广告,说有部旧车要卖。</p> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                        |                                                                                    |
|--------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>attack</b>[ə'tæk]<br/>                 v. 攻击</p> | <p>They <b>attacked</b> the enemy at sundown.<br/>                 他们在日落时攻击敌人。</p> |
|--------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>blacksmith</b><br/>[ˈblæksmiθ]<br/>n. 铁匠</p>                                                                                       | <p>A <b>blacksmith</b> makes things with iron by beating it and hammering it into shape.<br/>铁匠将铁加热后, 锤打成形, 制成物品。</p>                                                              |
| <p><b>brook</b>[brʊk]<br/>n. 溪流</p>                                                                                                      | <p>A <b>brook</b> is a natural waterway smaller than a river.<br/>溪流是天然的水道, 比河小。</p>                                                                                               |
| <p><b>ceiling</b>[ˈsi:lɪŋ]<br/>n. 天花板</p>                                                                                                | <p>Lying on the sofa, he could see the <b>ceiling</b> of the room.<br/>他躺在沙发上, 可以看到房间的天花板。</p>                                                                                     |
| <p><b>comfort</b><br/>[ˈkʌmfət]<br/>v. 安慰</p>                                                                                            | <p>I tried to <b>comfort</b> Jean after her mother's death.<br/>琼的母亲过世后, 我试着安慰她。</p>                                                                                               |
| <p><b>confine</b><br/>[kənˈfaɪn]<br/>v. 1. 限制<br/>2. 卧病</p>                                                                              | <p>Please <b>confine</b> your remarks to the subject we are talking about.<br/>请你将话题限制在我们正在谈论的主题上。<br/>John was <b>confined</b> to bed for a week with his cold. 约翰因感冒卧病在床一星期。</p> |
| <p><b>convert</b>[kənˈvɜ:t]<br/>v. 改变<br/> change</p> | <p>Give me time and I'll <b>convert</b> her to our political party.<br/>给我时间, 我会让她加入我们的政党。</p>                                                                                     |
| <p><b>cunning</b>[ˈkʌnɪŋ]<br/>adj. 狡猾的</p>                                                                                               | <p>He is as <b>cunning</b> as a fox.<br/>他像狐狸一样狡猾。</p>                                                                                                                             |
| <p><b>delegate</b><br/>[ˈdelɪgət]<br/>n. 代表</p>                                                                                          | <p>Our club sent two <b>delegates</b> to attend the meeting.<br/>我们的社团派了两名代表去参加会议。</p>                                                                                             |

**Exercise 21.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Because of heavy rain he was \_\_\_\_\_ to his room all day.
2. We should \_\_\_\_\_ those who are in sorrow.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ can mend tools and horse-shoes.
4. When people lose something valuable, they usually \_\_\_\_\_ it in the newspaper.
5. John was \_\_\_\_\_ to Buddhism by a Chinese priest.

**【解答】** 1. confined      2. comfort      3. Blacksmiths  
4. advertise      5. converted

《第二部分》

**dim**[dɪm] | The light is too **dim** for me to see.  
*adj.* 微暗的 | 灯光太暗,我看不见。

**drag**[dræg] | The horse was **dragging** a heavy load.  
*v.* 拖 | 马正拖着重负。

**emperor** | Napoleon was the **Emperor** of France.  
[ˈempərə(r)] | 拿破仑是法国的皇帝。  
*n.* 皇帝

**estate**[ɪsˈteɪt] | The rich left a great **estate** when he died.  
*n.* 财产 | 那富人死时留下一大笔财产。

**exclaim** | “It’s eight o’clock.” his mother **exclaimed**.  
[ɪksˈkleɪm] | “8点了。”他的母亲大叫着。  
*v.* 大叫

**fierce** [fiəs] | He bought a *fierce* dog to guard his house.  
*adj.* 凶猛的 | 他买了一只恶犬看家。

**fortunate** [ˈfɔ:tʃənət] | You are *fortunate* in having such a fine family.  
*adj.* 幸福的 | 你有一个这么好的家庭,真是幸福。

**gaze** [geɪz] | For hours she sat *gazing* the stars.  
*v.* 凝视 | 她坐着凝视星星好几个小时。  
 *stare*

**habit** [ˈhæbit] | Some people said that smoking is a bad *habit*.  
*n.* 习惯 | 有人说抽烟是坏习惯。

**hop** [hɒp] | He had hurt his foot and had to *hop* along.  
*v.* 跳跃 | 他的脚受伤了,不得不跳着走。

**Exercise 21.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Are you in the \_\_\_\_\_ of going to bed early and rising earlier?
2. The child had \_\_\_\_\_ at the stranger for a few minutes before answering his questions.
3. You are \_\_\_\_\_ to have such rich parents.
4. He has a beautiful \_\_\_\_\_ 40 miles from Los Angeles with a country house and a swimming pool on it.
5. He was \_\_\_\_\_ out of his hiding place.

**【解答】** 1. habit 2. gazed 3. fortunate 4. estate  
 5. dragged

《第三部分》

|                                                                |                                                                                                             |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>independence</b><br/>[ˌɪndɪˈpendəns]<br/>n. 独立</p>       | <p>People on these island fought for <i>independence</i> and finally succeeded.<br/>这些岛上的人民为独立而战, 终获胜利。</p> |
| <p><b>international</b><br/>[ˌɪntəˈnæʃənəl]<br/>adj. 国际的</p>   | <p>A treaty is an <i>international</i> agreement.<br/>条约是国际协定。</p>                                          |
| <p><b>kite</b>[kaɪt]<br/>n. 风筝</p>                             | <p>A <i>kite</i> was flying in the air at the end of a long string.<br/>风筝被绑在一根长线的尾端, 飞翔在空中。</p>            |
| <p><b>leisure</b>[ˈleɪzə(r)]<br/>n. 空闲</p>                     | <p>She spends at least half of her <i>leisure</i> in reading.<br/>她的空闲时间至少有一半花在阅读上。</p>                     |
| <p><b>machinery</b><br/>[məˈʃɪnəri]<br/>n. 机器</p>              | <p>The factory has much new <i>machinery</i>.<br/>这家工厂有许多新机器。</p>                                           |
| <p><b>melt</b>[melt]<br/>v. 融化<br/>☐ dissolve<br/>☒ freeze</p> | <p>The ice will <i>melt</i> when the sun shines on it.<br/>冰被太阳照射时会融化。</p>                                  |
| <p><b>modest</b>[ˈmɒdɪst]<br/>adj. 谦逊的</p>                     | <p>The hero was very <i>modest</i> about his great deeds.<br/>那英雄对他伟大的功绩, 毫不夸耀。</p>                         |

**nervous** ['nɜ:vəs] | A person who has been overworking is likely to become *nervous*.  
*adj.* 紧张的 | 工作过度的人容易紧张。

**offer** ['ɒfə(r)] | He *offered* a few ideas to improve the plan.  
*v.* 提出 | 他提出一些意见以改进那个计划。  
 propose

**pack** [pæk] | She *packed* a suitcase for the trip.  
*v.* 装 | 她为旅行装了一个旅行箱。  
*n.* 包 | The camper had cooking equipment in his *pack*.  
 那露营者的背包里有烹饪用具。

**Exercise 21.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Six nations have signed a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ trade agreement.
2. When you began to earn money, you can live a life of \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I like a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ girl, who is neither shy nor loud.
4. She is so \_\_\_\_\_ that she jumps at the slightest noise.
5. He \_\_\_\_\_ twenty dollars for a new stove, but the seller refused to sell it at that price.

**【解答】** 1. international    2. independence    3. modest  
 4. nervous    5. offered

《第四部分》

**paw** [pɔ:] | The dog lifted his two front *paws* before his master.  
*n.* (有爪的)脚 | 那只狗在主人面前立起两只前脚。

**pigeon** [ˈpɪdʒɪn] | *Pigeons* are often trained to carry messages.  
*n.* 鸽子 | 鸽子常被训练来传送信息。

**poverty** [ˈpɒvəti] | His ragged clothes and broken furniture indicated his *poverty*.  
*n.* 贫穷 | 他的旧衣服和破家具表示他贫穷。  
 ☒ wealth

**project** [ˈprɒdʒekt] | A *project* to build a new church was discussed at the meeting.  
*n.* 计划 | 那会议讨论了一个修建新教堂的计划。  
 ☒ plan, scheme

**reduce** [rɪˈdjuːs] | She is now 150 pounds; she has to *reduce* her weight.  
*v.* 减轻 | 她现在重 150 磅, 她该减肥了。

**reply** [rɪˈplai] | She *replied* to my letter right away.  
*v.* 回复 | 她立刻回复了我的信。  
*n.* 回答 | He made no *reply* to my question.  
 他没回答我的问题。

**rifle** [ˈraɪfl] | A *rifle* is usually fired from the shoulder.  
*n.* 步枪 | 步枪通常抵在肩上发射。  
 ☒ musket

**salary** [ˈsæləri] | His *salary* will be increased next year.  
*n.* 薪水 | 他的薪水明年将会提高。

**section** [ˈsekʃən] | Mother cut the pie into eight *sections*.  
*n.* 部分 | 母亲将馅饼切成八份。  
*v.* 划分 | The teacher *sectioned* the class by ability ratings.  
 老师按能力将学生分班。  
 ☒ divide, classify

**shoot**[ʃu:t] | He *shot* at a bird, but missed it.  
*v.* 射击 | 他朝一只鸟射击,可是没命中。  
 fire

**Exercise 21.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. I asked him where to go, but he didn't \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Don't drive so fast; \_\_\_\_\_ speed, please.
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ of his family made it impossible for him to go to school.
4. Soldiers are equipped with \_\_\_\_\_ and trained to use them.
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ an arrow at the spot on the wall, but the arrow didn't even reach the wall.

【解答】 1. reply    2. reduce    3. poverty    4. rifles  
 5. shot

《第五部分》

**slope**[sləʊp] | We climbed the steep *slope* of the hill.  
*n.* 坡;斜面 | 我们爬那座陡峭的山坡。  
*v.* 倾斜 | The railroad *slopes* up slightly at this point.  
 铁路在此处有轻微的倾斜。

**spider** | A *spider* is a small animal with eight legs.  
 ['spaɪdə(r)] | 蜘蛛是有八只脚的小动物。  
*n.* 蜘蛛

**starve**[stɑ:v] | They got lost in the desert and *starved* to death.  
*v.* 饥饿 | 他们迷失在沙漠中而饿死。



*v.* 除草 | He spent the whole afternoon **weeding** in the garden.  
他花了整个下午在花园里除草。

**yield**[ji:ld] | This land **yields** good crops.  
*v.* 1. 出产 | 这片田出产好谷物。  
 produce  
2. 屈服 | The enemy finally **yielded** to our soldiers.  
 submit | 敌人终于向我们的士兵屈服。

**Exercise 21.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The man said he would \_\_\_\_\_ rather than beg for good.
2. Most \_\_\_\_\_ make webs to catch insects for food.
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ of that roof is very steep.
4. Yesterday he \_\_\_\_\_ his resignation to the Prime Minister.
5. He is not the sort of man to be \_\_\_\_\_.

**【解答】** 1. starve    2. spiders    3. slope    4. tendered  
5. trusted

## 效果检测

**Exercise 21.6** 找出一个与其他三个不相关的词:

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. (A) parcel    (B) pack    (C) part    (D) packet
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. (A) progress    (B) scheme    (C) plan    (D) project
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. (A) cunning    (B) tender    (C) clever    (D) sly
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. (A) drag    (B) haul    (C) pull    (D) delay
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. (A) brook    (B) broom    (C) steam    (D) creek
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. (A) respond    (B) reply    (C) relate    (D) answer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. (A) vow    (B) confidence

- \_\_\_\_\_ (C) trust (D) reliance  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 8. (A) practice (B) custom  
 (C) habit (D) comfort  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 9. (A) reduce (B) yield  
 (C) lessen (D) decrease  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 10. (A) exclaim (B) yell (C) proclaim (D) shout

**【解答】** 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. B 6. C 7. A  
 8. D 9. B 10. C

**Exercise 21.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. 紧张的  
 (A) tragic (B) violent (C) nervous (D) cautious  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 2. 空闲  
 (A) patience (B) lack  
 (C) independence (D) leisure  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 3. 饥饿  
 (A) escape (B) starve (C) sting (D) quiver  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 4. 登广告  
 (A) advertise (B) broadcast  
 (C) contract (D) purchase  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 5. 贫穷  
 (A) doubt (B) servant  
 (C) poverty (D) cowardice

**【解答】** 1. C 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. C

**Exercise 21.8** 找出一个与斜体词的意义相反的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. *arrogant*

- (A) smooth (B) modest (C) soft (D) dull
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. *grieve*  
 (A) sorrow (B) gloomy (C) comfort (D) lucky
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. *push*  
 (A) delay (B) drag (C) seize (D) pour
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. *increase*  
 (A) reduce (B) melt (C) dissolve (D) enlarge
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. *miserable*  
 (A) tender (B) modest (C) fortunate (D) clever

**【解答】** 1. B 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. C

**Exercise 21.9** 完整拼出下列句中所欠缺的单词：

- I asked him, but he made no r \_\_\_\_\_ y. (回答)
- Don't s \_\_\_\_\_ w the hot coffee; your throat may burn. (吞咽)
- Tiberius was the e \_\_\_\_\_ r of Rome during the life of Jesus Christ. (国王)
- He went hunting with a r \_\_\_\_\_ e in his hand. (步枪)
- The children choose one d \_\_\_\_\_ e to buy the flowers. (代表)

**【解答】** 1. reply 2. swallow 3. emperor 4. rifle  
5. delegate

**Exercise 21.10** 找出一个与句中斜体词的意义最接近的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. This factory *yields* cars of good quality.  
 (A) sells (B) buys (C) produces (D) offers
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. He has just bought an *estate* in the country.  
 (A) pasture (B) property (C) house (D) castle

- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. We *gazed* at the man, wondering who he was.  
 (A) conceived (B) conversed  
 (C) mocked (D) stared
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The general decided to *attack* the enemy's positions.  
 (A) offend (B) oppose (C) guard (D) assault
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Then man was killed by a *fierce* wolf.  
 (A) violent (B) bitter  
 (C) stubborn (D) nervous
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. The rough material hurt the child's *tender* skin.  
 (A) gay (B) beautiful (C) soft (D) tough
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. The snow soon *melted* away when the warm weather came.  
 (A) resolved (B) dissolved  
 (C) destroyed (D) reduced
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Coal can be *converted* to gas by burning.  
 (A) reduced (B) yielded  
 (C) changed (D) separated
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. The young actress is very *modest* about her success.  
 (A) humble (B) proud (C) merry (D) serious
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. A team of four horses *dragged* the big log out of the forest.  
 (A) fetched (B) pulled (C) pushed (D) carried

**【解答】** 1. C    2. B    3. D    4. D    5. A  
 6. C    7. B    8. C    9. A    10. B

## LESSON 22

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. *Delicate* machines should be handled with great \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) force (B) care
2. The farmers *drained* the swamp to get more \_\_\_\_\_ for crops.  
(A) land (B) water
3. With *brooms* we \_\_\_\_\_ our rooms.  
(A) clean (B) decorate
4. \_\_\_\_\_ voices *hailed* us as we entered the hall.  
(A) Angry (B) Cheerful
5. The *foul* air in this room should be \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) changed (B) cooled down

## ◆ 解 答 ◆

1. B 2. A 3. A 4. B 5. A

## 《第一部分》

**affair**[ə'fɛə(r)]

n. 1. 事务

 business, job

2. 事情

When he asked me how much money I earned, I told him to mind his own **affairs**.

当他问我赚了多少钱时,我叫他别管闲事。

The meeting was a noisy **affair**.

那会议十分嘈杂。

|                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>attempt</b><br/>[ə'tempt]<br/>v. 试图</p>                        | <p>I <i>attempted</i> to speak but was told to be quiet.<br/>我想说话,可是有人叫我闭嘴。</p>                                                                                      |
| <p><b>blade</b>[bleɪd]<br/>n. 刀锋</p>                                 | <p>A razor should have a very sharp <i>blade</i>.<br/>刮胡刀应有锐利的刀锋。</p>                                                                                                |
| <p><b>broom</b>[bru:m]<br/>n. 扫帚</p>                                 | <p>I swept the broken glass into a pile with a <i>broom</i>.<br/>我用扫帚把碎玻璃扫成一堆。</p>                                                                                   |
| <p><b>cell</b>[sel]<br/>n. 1. 小蜂窝<br/>2. 细胞</p>                      | <p>Bees store honey in the <i>cells</i> of a honeycomb.<br/>蜜蜂将花蜜储存在蜂巢的各个小蜂窝中。<br/>All animals and plants are made of <i>cells</i>.<br/>所有的动植物都由细胞组成。</p>            |
| <p><b>command</b><br/>[kə'mɑ:nd]<br/>v. 命令</p>                       | <p>The officer <i>commanded</i> his men to fire at the enemy.<br/>指挥官命令部下向敌军开火。</p>                                                                                  |
| <p><b>confirm</b><br/>[kən'fɜ:m]<br/>v. 证实<br/>☐ approve</p>         | <p>The rumor that there was flooding was <i>confirmed</i> by a news broadcast.<br/>洪水的谣传已被新闻广播所证实。</p>                                                               |
| <p><b>convince</b><br/>[kən'vɪns]<br/>v. 使相信<br/>☐ persuade</p>      | <p>We are <i>convinced</i> that Anne went by train rather than by plane.<br/>我们相信安妮是坐火车去的,不是坐飞机。</p>                                                                 |
| <p><b>cure</b>[kjʊə(r)]<br/>v. 治愈<br/>☐ remedy, heal<br/>n. 治疗方法</p> | <p>This medicine should <i>cure</i> you of your cold.<br/>这种药应该能治愈你的感冒。<br/>He has tried all sorts of <i>cures</i> but he is still ill.<br/>他已尝试过各种治疗方法,可是病还是没好。</p> |

|                                             |                                                                                            |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>delicate</b><br>[ 'delɪkət ]<br>adj. 灵敏的 | A pianist or a violinist must have a <b>delicate</b> sense of touch.<br>钢琴家或小提琴家都必须有灵敏的触感。 |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**Exercise 22.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Scientists sometimes need very \_\_\_\_\_ instruments.
2. Resting in bed will often \_\_\_\_\_ a cold.
3. The mistake you made \_\_\_\_\_ me you hadn't studied your lesson.
4. He sent the written request to \_\_\_\_\_ his telephone order.
5. The captain of a ship \_\_\_\_\_ all the officers and men.

**【解答】** 1. delicate 2. cure 3. convinced 4. confirm  
5. commands

《第二部分》

|                                                                                                                          |                                                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>dip</b> [dɪp]<br>v. 伸入<br> immerse | She <b>dipped</b> her hand into the pool to see how cold the water was.<br>她将手伸入游泳池试试水有多冷。 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                                                                               |                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>drain</b> [dreɪn]<br>v. 排水<br> irrigate | You should dig trenches to <b>drain</b> away the water.<br>你应该挖沟以便排水。 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                          |                                                                              |
|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>emphasis</b><br>[ 'emfəsis ]<br>n. 强调 | Some schools put special <b>emphasis</b> on language study.<br>有些学校特别注重语言学习。 |
|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>estimate</b><br>[ 'estɪmənt ]<br>v. 估计<br> evaluate | The gardener <b>estimated</b> that it would take four hours to weed the garden.<br>花匠估计替花园除草需要四小时。 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                               |                                                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>figure</b> [ˈfɪgə(r)]<br><i>n.</i> 人影; 画像                  | I saw a <b>figure</b> approaching in the darkness.<br>我在黑暗中看见有人影接近。        |
| <b>foul</b> [faʊl]<br><i>adj.</i> 污浊的                         | We opened the windows to let out the <b>foul</b> air.<br>我们打开窗子, 让污浊的空气流出。 |
| <b>gem</b> [dʒem]<br><i>n.</i> 宝石<br>同 jewel                  | Diamonds and rubies are well-known <b>gems</b> .<br>钻石和红宝石都是大家熟知的宝石。       |
| <b>hail</b> [heɪl]<br><i>v.</i> 欢呼<br>同 cheer, greet          | The crowd <b>hailed</b> the new boxing champion.<br>群众向新的拳击冠军欢呼。           |
| <b>horizon</b><br>[həˈraɪzən]<br><i>n.</i> 地平线                | We saw a small ship on the <b>horizon</b> .<br>我们看到地平线上有条小船。               |
| <b>indicate</b><br>[ˈɪndɪkeɪt]<br><i>v.</i> 指示<br>同 designate | The arrow on the sign <b>indicates</b> the way to go.<br>标志上的箭头指示应走的方向。    |

**Exercise 22.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. A writer sometimes underlines important words for \_\_\_\_\_.
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ his spoon into the soup and began breakfast.
3. The wall was covered with \_\_\_\_\_ of birds and flowers.
4. The air in this room is \_\_\_\_\_; open the window!
5. The crown of the queen sparkled with \_\_\_\_\_.

**【解答】** 1. emphasis 2. dipped 3. figures 4. foul  
5. gems

## 《第三部分》

|                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                   |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>interrupt</b><br>[ˌɪntəˈrʌpt]<br>v. 打扰                                                                                            | Don't <i>interrupt</i> me when I am busy.<br>在我忙时, 不要打扰我。                                                         |
| <b>kneel</b> [ni:l]<br>v. 跪下                                                                                                         | She <i>knelt</i> down to pull weeds from the flower bed.<br>她跪下拔去花坛中的杂草。                                          |
| <b>lessen</b> ['lesən]<br>v. 减轻<br> increase      | The child's fever <i>lessened</i> during the night.<br>那孩子的发烧在晚上减轻了。                                              |
| <b>magic</b><br>['mædʒɪk]<br>n. 魔术<br> witchcraft | In fairy tales witches often use <i>magic</i> to change persons into beasts or birds.<br>在神话故事中, 巫婆常使用魔术将人变成野兽或鸟。 |
| <b>mend</b> [mend]<br>v. 修补<br> repair, fix       | My brother <i>mended</i> the broken doll for me.<br>我哥哥替我修补破损的娃娃。                                                 |
| <b>moist</b> [mɔɪst]<br>adj. 潮湿的                                                                                                     | The thick steam in the room had made the walls <i>moist</i> . 房间中大量的水汽使得墙壁潮湿。                                     |
| <b>nest</b> [nest]<br>n. 巢                                                                                                           | Most birds lay their eggs in their <i>nests</i> .<br>大部分鸟在它们的巢中下蛋。                                                |

|                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                          |
|------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>official</b>[ə'fɪʃəl]<br/>n. 官员</p> <p>adj. 公务上的</p> | <p>The President is the most powerful government <b>official</b>.</p> <p>总统是最有权力的政府官员。</p> <p>The letter should be written in an <b>official</b> style. 这封信应写成公函的形式。</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                               |                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>package</b><br/>['pækɪdʒ]<br/>n. 包裹</p> | <p>He carried a large <b>package</b> of books.</p> <p>他带来一大包书。</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                 |                                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>payroll</b><br/>['peɪrəʊl]<br/>n. 薪水册</p> | <p>Don't do the work until he puts you on the <b>payroll</b>.</p> <p>直到他把你的名字写入薪水册后, 你再做那件工作。</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**Exercise 22.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. He made a trip to Beijing on \_\_\_\_\_ business.
2. The birds build their \_\_\_\_\_ with twigs and leaves.
3. Her eyes got \_\_\_\_\_ when she heard the bad news.
4. I don't want to be \_\_\_\_\_ in my business.
5. She \_\_\_\_\_ down on the grass to examine a flower.

**【解答】** 1. official 2. nests 3. moist 4. interrupted  
5. knelt

## 《第四部分》

|                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>pile</b>[paɪl]<br/> <i>n.</i> 推;大批<br/> <i>v.</i> 堆积<br/>  heap</p>              | <p>The room was full of <i>piles</i> of old books.<br/>         这房间里摆满了一堆堆的旧书。<br/>         The snow <i>piled</i> so high in front of the door that we couldn't go out.<br/>         门前积雪太高,因此我们出不去。</p> |
| <p><b>practical</b><br/>         ['præktɪkəl]<br/> <i>adj.</i> 实际的</p>                                                                                                  | <p>His plan was interesting but not <i>practical</i>.<br/>         他的计划有趣,可是不实际。</p>                                                                                                                     |
| <p><b>prompt</b>[prɒmpt]<br/> <i>adj.</i> 迅速的,<br/>         果断的<br/>  immediate</p>  | <p>His <i>prompt</i> action prevented serious trouble.<br/>         他迅速的行动避免了大祸。</p>                                                                                                                     |
| <p><b>refer</b>[rɪ'fɜ:(r)]<br/> <i>v.</i> 参考</p>                                                                                                                        | <p>If you don't know what this mean, <i>refer</i> to the dictionary.<br/>         如果你不知道这是什么意思,就查查字典。</p>                                                                                                |
| <p><b>represent</b><br/>         [ˌreprɪ'zent]<br/> <i>v.</i> 代表<br/>  symbolize</p> | <p>On the map, blue <i>represents</i> water and brown <i>represents</i> land.<br/>         在地图上,蓝色代表海,棕色代表陆地。</p>                                                                                        |
| <p><b>righteous</b><br/>         ['raɪtʃəs]<br/> <i>adj.</i> 公正的</p>                                                                                                    | <p>He is a <i>righteous</i> man; he always behaves justly.<br/>         他是个公正的人;他一向行为公正。</p>                                                                                                             |
| <p><b>sandwich</b><br/>         ['sændwɪtʃ]<br/> <i>n.</i> 三明治</p>                                                                                                      | <p>He ate <i>sandwiches</i> for lunch.<br/>         他午餐吃三明治。</p>                                                                                                                                         |

*v.* 夹在中间 | Their house was **sandwiched** between two tall buildings.  
他们的房子被夹在两栋大建筑物中间。

**secure**  
[sɪ'kjʊə(r)]  
*adj.* 安心的  
*v.* 1. 保护  
    ☐ protect  
    2. 获得  
    ☐ get, obtain

He hoped for a **secure** old age.  
他希望有一个无忧无虑的晚年。

We must **secure** ourselves against the dangers of the coming storm. 我们应该保护自己, 免受即将来临的暴雨之害。

He's lucky to have **secured** himself such a good job.  
他获得这么好的工作, 真是幸运。

**shortage**  
['ʃɔ:tɪdʒ]  
*n.* 缺乏  
☐ lack ☒ surplus

The rice crop will be poor because of the **shortage** of the rain.  
稻米因缺雨, 将会不足。

**smart**[smɑ:t]  
*adj.* 聪明的

Both of his children are very **smart**.  
他的两个孩子都非常聪明。

**Exercise 22.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. You'd better \_\_\_\_\_ to the dictionary for the meaning of the word.
2. The red lines on the map \_\_\_\_\_ railways.
3. The fort was \_\_\_\_\_ against any surprise attack.
4. I expect your \_\_\_\_\_ answer to my question.
5. There is a \_\_\_\_\_ of grain because of poor crops.

【解答】 1. refer 2. represent 3. secure 4. prompt  
5. shortage

## 《第五部分》

|                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>spill</b> [spɪl]<br><i>v.</i> 洒                                                                             | The child <b>spilled</b> the milk on the floor.<br>那孩子将牛奶洒在地上。                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>statesman</b><br>['steɪtsmən]<br><i>n.</i> 政治家                                                              | Winston Churchill was a famous English <b>statesman</b> .<br>温斯顿·邱吉尔是有名的英国政治家。                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>struggle</b><br>['strʌɡl]<br><i>v.</i> 努力; 奋斗                                                               | The widow <b>struggled</b> to send her six children to college.<br>那个寡妇努力送六个孩子上大学。                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>sway</b> [sweɪ]<br><i>v.</i> 摇摆<br><br><i>n.</i> 摇摆                                                         | The branches of the trees were <b>swaying</b> in the wind.<br>树枝在风中摇摆。<br><br>The <b>sway</b> of the pail caused some milk to spill out.<br>摆荡的桶使一些牛奶溢出。                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>term</b> [tɜ:m]<br><i>n.</i> 1. 期间<br>2. 学期<br>同 semester<br>3. 术语<br>同 word<br>4. 条件(常用复数)<br>同 conditions | The President is elected for a four-year <b>term</b> .<br>当选的总统任期四年。<br><br>Are there any examinations at the end of this <b>term</b> ?<br>这学期末有什么考试吗?<br><br>The author uses many technical <b>terms</b> in this book.<br>那位作者在这本书中使用了许多专门术语。<br><br>The <b>terms</b> of the contract are unfair.<br>合同的条件不公平。 |

|                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>toil</b>[tɔɪl]</p> <p><i>v.</i> 辛苦工作</p> <p><i>n.</i> 1. 辛劳</p> <p>2. 网(常用复数)</p>                           | <p>They <b>toiled</b> with their hands for a living.<br/>他们为生计而用双手辛苦地工作。</p> <p>He succeeded after years of <b>toil</b>.<br/>他在多年的辛劳后成功。</p> <p>A lion was caught in the <b>toils</b>.<br/>一只狮子陷入网中。</p> |
| <p><b>tune</b>[tju:n]</p> <p><i>n.</i> 节奏</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> melody</p> <p><i>v.</i> 调音</p>          | <p>There are <b>tunes</b> that are easy to remember.<br/>有些节奏容易记住。</p> <p>A man is <b>tuning</b> the piano.<br/>有个人正在为钢琴调音。</p>                                                                          |
| <p><b>vice</b>[vaɪs]</p> <p><i>n.</i> 恶习</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> evil <input type="checkbox"/> virtue</p> | <p>He loves drinking beer; it is one of his <b>vices</b>.<br/>他喜欢喝啤酒,这是他的恶习之一。</p>                                                                                                                       |
| <p><b>weep</b>[wi:p]</p> <p><i>v.</i> 哭泣</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> cry</p>                                  | <p>He lost control of his feelings and began to <b>weep</b>.<br/>他无法控制自己的感情,开始哭泣。</p>                                                                                                                    |
| <p><b>zone</b>[zəʊn]</p> <p><i>n.</i> 地区</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> area</p>                                 | <p>Don't come into the danger <b>zone</b>.<br/>不要进入危险地带。</p>                                                                                                                                             |

**Exercise 22.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Who has \_\_\_\_\_ the ink on my notebook?
2. We honored him as our leading \_\_\_\_\_.
3. She \_\_\_\_\_ to get on the bus during the rush hours.
4. In spite of the police, there is usually a certain amount of \_\_\_\_\_ in all big cities.
5. Do you know the \_\_\_\_\_ of this song?

【解答】 1. spilled 2. statesman 3. struggled 4. vice  
5. tune

## 效果检测

**Exercise 22.6** 找出一个与斜体词的意义最接近的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. a famous *statesman*  
(A) lawyer (B) soldier  
(C) businessman (D) politician
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. a *smart* boy  
(A) dirty (B) swift (C) clever (D) small
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. a *secure* position  
(A) safe (B) good (C) modest (D) bad
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. a *righteous* man  
(A) practical (B) just (C) clever (D) fierce
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. to put *stress* on something  
(A) spot (B) emphasis (C) emotion (D) trust
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. to *cure* illness  
(A) vanish (B) repair (C) heal (D) diminish
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. to *stand for* something  
(A) hail (B) refer (C) confirm (D) represent
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. a *safety zone*  
(A) area (B) rule (C) vest (D) device
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. to *repair* something  
(A) reduce (B) mend (C) respond (D) refer
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. to *convince* someone  
(A) interrupt (B) approve (C) convert (D) assure

**【解答】** 1. D    2. C    3. A    4. B    5. B  
6. C    7. D    8. A    9. B    10. D

**Exercise 22.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. 潮湿的  
(A) modest    (B) moist    (C) moderate    (D) dim
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. 立即的  
(A) prompt    (B) magic    (C) fierce    (D) smart
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. 官员  
(A) senator    (B) mayor    (C) instructor    (D) official
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. 试图  
(A) refer    (B) toil    (C) attempt    (D) pile
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. 宝石  
(A) gold    (B) gem    (C) silver    (D) cell

**【解答】** 1. B    2. A    3. D    4. C    5. B

**Exercise 22.8** 找出一个与斜体词的意义相反的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. *virtue*  
(A) spider    (B) lack    (C) leisure    (D) vice
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. *crude*  
(A) weak    (B) delicate    (C) safe    (D) moist
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. *foul*  
(A) dirty    (B) clean    (C) dry    (D) damp
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. *obey*  
(A) reduce    (B) interrupt    (C) command    (D) yield
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. *surplus*

(A) shortage (B) leisure (C) evil (D) wage

**【解答】** 1. D 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. A

**Exercise 22.9** 完整拼出下列句中所欠缺的单词:

1. My high school puts great e \_\_\_\_\_ s on studies that are practical in our daily life. (强调)
2. Please c \_\_\_\_\_ m your telephone message. (证实)
3. It is not polite to i \_\_\_\_\_ t when someone is talking. (打扰)
4. The poor beggar had to s \_\_\_\_\_ e for a living. (奋斗)
5. It took many hours to c \_\_\_\_\_ e John of his wife's guilt. (使相信)

**【解答】** 1. emphasis 2. confirm 3. interrupt  
4. struggle 5. convince

**Exercise 22.10** 选出最符合句意的一个单词:

1. She \_\_\_\_\_ for joy when she won the award.  
(A) piled (B) struggled (C) confessed (D) wept
2. Leave me alone! Mind your own \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) affairs (B) defects (C) dignity (D) virtue
3. A colonel is an officer who \_\_\_\_\_ a regiment.  
(A) confines (B) assaults (C) commands (D) obeys
4. He had the \_\_\_\_\_ of his skate sharpened.  
(A) slopes (B) backs (C) tunes (D) blades
5. The prisoners \_\_\_\_\_ to escape but failed.  
(A) swayed (B) attempted  
(C) exclaimed (D) intervened

6. Parents try to \_\_\_\_\_ their children of bad habits.  
 (A) cure      (B) dissolve      (C) drain      (D) yield
7. He has \_\_\_\_\_ himself that his method is the best.  
 (A) convinced      (B) restrained  
 (C) indicated      (D) represented
8. We \_\_\_\_\_ that it would take three months to finish the work.  
 (A) attempted      (B) estimated  
 (C) converted      (D) interrupted
9. The \_\_\_\_\_ machine can record even very slight changes.  
 (A) dull      (B) fierce      (C) foul      (D) delicate
10. She went into the church and \_\_\_\_\_ down to pray.  
 (A) melt      (B) piled      (C) knelt      (D) spilt

**【解答】** 1. D    2. A    3. C    4. D    5. B  
 6. A    7. A    8. B    9. D    10. C

## LESSON 23

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案:

1. Most flowers would *perish* when \_\_\_\_\_ comes.  
(A) winter (B) summer
2. *Experts* know a lot about \_\_\_\_\_ things.  
(A) special (B) general
3. They look so \_\_\_\_\_ each other that we thought they were *twins*.  
(A) alike (B) unlike
4. I was most *grateful* to John for his \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) kindness (B) cruelty
5. Most \_\_\_\_\_ turn *purple* when they ripen.  
(A) apples (B) grapes

## ◆ 解 答 ◆

1. A 2. A 3. A 4. A 5. B

## 《第一部分》

**acid** [ˈæsɪd]

n. 酸性物质

Some **acids** burn holes in cloth and wood.

有些酸性物质能在布料或木头上烧成洞。

**approach**

[əˈprəʊtʃ]

v. 接近

As we **approached** the man, we saw that he was blind.

当我们接近那个人时,发现他是个盲人。

|                                                               |                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>battle</b>['bætl]<br/>n. 战斗</p>                         | <p>It is interesting to watch a <i>battle</i> between two lions.<br/>看两只狮子搏斗是有趣的。</p>                 |
| <p><b>bough</b>[bau]<br/>n. 树枝<br/>同 branch</p>               | <p>The <i>bough</i> bent under the weight of the snow.<br/>那树枝因雪的重压而弯曲。</p>                           |
| <p><b>capable</b><br/>['keɪpəbl]<br/>adj. 有能力的</p>            | <p>Mr. Smith is a man <i>capable</i> of doing anything.<br/>史密斯先生能做任何事。</p>                           |
| <p><b>choke</b>[tʃəʊk]<br/>v. 窒息<br/>同 suffocate</p>          | <p>The smoke from the burning building almost <i>choked</i> the fireman.<br/>着火建筑物冒出来的烟,几乎使消防员窒息。</p> |
| <p><b>comrade</b><br/>['kɒmɹɪd]<br/>n. 伙伴<br/>同 companion</p> | <p>The two boys were close <i>comrades</i> and did everything together.<br/>这两个男孩是亲密的伙伴,做任何事都在一起。</p> |
| <p><b>consult</b><br/>[kən'sʌlt]<br/>v. 请教</p>                | <p>Have you <i>consulted</i> your doctor about your illness?<br/>你向医生请教过病情吗?</p>                      |
| <p><b>credit</b>['kredit]<br/>n. 信用<br/>同 trust</p>           | <p>If you pay your bills on time, your <i>credit</i> will be good.<br/>如果你能按时付清账单,你的信用将会很好。</p>       |
| <p><b>declare</b><br/>[dɪ'kleə(r)]<br/>v. 宣布</p>              | <p>When will the results of the election be <i>declared</i>?<br/>选举结果何时宣布?</p>                        |

**Exercise 23.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The rabbits hid under a pile of \_\_\_\_\_ cut from the tree.
2. As winter \_\_\_\_\_, the weather grew colder.
3. Some airplanes are \_\_\_\_\_ of flying 1,000 miles an hour.
4. You'd better \_\_\_\_\_ a dictionary for the meaning of a new word.
5. Fighting had been going on for a year but war had not yet been \_\_\_\_\_.

**【解答】** 1. boughs      2. approached      3. capable  
4. consult      5. declared

《第二部分》

|                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>destroy</b> [dis'trɔɪ]<br/>v. 破坏</p>                                          | <p>Careless children <b>destroy</b> all their toys.<br/>粗心的孩子会弄坏所有的玩具。</p>                                                                    |
| <p><b>disturb</b> [dis'tɜ:b]<br/>v. 扰乱<br/>同 bother</p>                             | <p>She opened the door quietly so as not to <b>dis-</b><br/><b>turb</b> the sleeping child.<br/>她静静地开门,以免惊扰睡觉的孩子。</p>                         |
| <p><b>effective</b><br/>[ɪ'fektɪv]<br/>adj. 有效的<br/>同 ineffective</p>               | <p>His efforts to improve the school have been<br/>very <b>effective</b>.<br/>他为改善学校所做的努力,非常有效。</p>                                           |
| <p><b>entire</b><br/>[ɪn'taɪə(r)]<br/>adj. 全部的<br/>同 whole, total,<br/>complete</p> | <p>The <b>entire</b> people in the country were sur-<br/>prised at the news that the earthquake was<br/>coming.<br/>全国人民对即将发生地震的消息都感到很惊讶。</p> |

|                                            |                                                                                             |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>expert</b> ['ekspɜ:t]<br>n. 专家          | She is an <b>expert</b> in teaching small children.<br>她是教导小孩子的专家。                          |
| <b>favor</b> ['feivə(r)]<br>n. 偏爱          | A mother shouldn't show too much <b>favor</b> to one of her children.<br>母亲不应该太偏爱某一个孩子。     |
| <b>flutter</b> ['flʌtə(r)]<br>v. 拍翅        | The wings of the bird still <b>fluttered</b> after it had been shot down.<br>鸟被打落后, 翅膀还在拍动。 |
| <b>fur</b> [fɜ:(r)]<br>n. 毛皮               | The <b>fur</b> coat will keep you warm during the winter.<br>毛皮大衣在冬天能使你暖和。                  |
| <b>grateful</b><br>['ɡreɪtful]<br>adj. 感激的 | I am <b>grateful</b> to the friends who have helped me.<br>我非常感激曾经帮助过我的朋友。                  |
| <b>hell</b> [hel]<br>n. 地狱<br>☒ heaven     | Wicked persons are said to be punished in <b>hell</b> after death.<br>据说坏人死后会在地狱受处罚。        |

**Exercise 23.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. He did all he could do to win her \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The new system of taxation will be \_\_\_\_\_ from next May.
3. Our hope of a picnic was completely \_\_\_\_\_ by the heavy rain.
4. She was wearing a very expensive \_\_\_\_\_ coat.
5. The curtains were \_\_\_\_\_ in the breeze.

**【解答】** 1. favor 2. effective 3. destroyed 4. fur  
5. fluttering

## ~~~~~ 《第三部分》 ~~~~~

|                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>immense</b><br>[ɪ'mens]<br><i>adj.</i> 极广大的                                                                                                  | An ocean is an <i>immense</i> body of water.<br>大海是一片汪洋。                                                                                           |
| <b>instant</b> [ 'ɪnstənt ]<br><i>adj.</i> 立刻的                                                                                                  | The medicine gave <i>instant</i> relief from pain.<br>这种药立刻减轻了痛苦。                                                                                  |
| <b>join</b> [ dʒɔɪn ]<br><i>v.</i> 连接                                                                                                           | Those two towns are <i>joined</i> by a railway.<br>这两个小镇由一条铁路连接。                                                                                   |
| <b>lash</b> [ læʃ ]<br><i>n.</i> 鞭打<br><i>v.</i> 鞭打<br> whip | The prisoner received ten <i>lashes</i> .<br>囚犯被打 10 鞭。<br>He <i>lashed</i> the horse until it ran.<br>他鞭打马直到它跑为止。                                 |
| <b>lodge</b> [ lɒdʒ ]<br><i>v.</i> 住宿<br> reside, dwell      | We <i>lodged</i> in a hotel on our trip.<br>我们旅行时,住在一家旅馆里。                                                                                         |
| <b>mast</b> [ mɑ:st ]<br><i>n.</i> 桅杆                                                                                                           | The ship has four <i>masts</i> for its sails.<br>那条船有四根桅杆挂帆。                                                                                       |
| <b>mirror</b><br>[ 'mɪrə(r) ]<br><i>n.</i> 镜子                                                                                                   | A woman usually carries a small <i>mirror</i> in her bag.<br>女人通常在手提包中带一面小镜子。                                                                      |
| <b>nail</b> [ neɪl ]<br><i>n.</i> 1. 指甲<br>2. 钉子                                                                                                | Many women have long <i>nails</i> for beauty.<br>许多女人为漂亮而留有长指甲。<br>He hammered some <i>nails</i> into the piece of hard wood.<br>他将一些钉子敲入那块坚硬的木头中。 |

|                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>observe</b> [əb'zɜ:v]</p> <p>v. 1. 观察</p> <p>2. 遵守</p> | <p>Did you <b>observe</b> anything strange in that boy's behavior?</p> <p>你观察到那男孩的行为有什么奇怪的地方吗?</p> <p>A careful driver <b>observes</b> the traffic rules.</p> <p>谨慎的司机遵守交通规则。</p> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                     |                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>outlook</b></p> <p>['aut-lʊk]</p> <p>n. 景色</p> <p>同 scene</p> | <p>From my study window I have a pleasant <b>out-</b><br/><b>look</b> over mountains and valleys.</p> <p>从我书房的窗口, 可以看到山谷的美丽景色。</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**Exercise 23.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. Please \_\_\_\_\_ the rule about not walking on the grass.
2. The driver saw in his driving \_\_\_\_\_ that a police car was following him.
3. One of the sailors climbed up the \_\_\_\_\_ to see what was on the horizon.
4. The shipwrecked sailors were \_\_\_\_\_ in the hotel.
5. The horse didn't run very fast, so he \_\_\_\_\_ it over the back with his whip.

**【解答】** 1. observe 2. mirror 3. mast 4. lodged  
5. lashed

## 《第四部分》

|                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>passage</b><br/>[ˈpæsɪdʒ]<br/>n. 1. 通过<br/>2. 通道</p>                    | <p>The old bridge is not strong enough to allow the <b>passage</b> of heavy trucks.<br/>旧桥不够坚固,无法让重型卡车通过。<br/>The <b>passage</b> between the two houses was blocked. 那两栋房子间的通道被阻塞了。</p> |
| <p><b>perish</b>[ˈperɪʃ]<br/>v. 死</p>                                         | <p>Hundreds of people <b>perished</b> in the earthquake.<br/>在那次地震中死了好几百人。</p>                                                                                                          |
| <p><b>politician</b><br/>[ˌpɒlɪˈtɪʃən]<br/>n. 政客</p>                          | <p><b>Politicians</b> are very busy when the election time comes.<br/>选举期间,政客们都非常忙碌。</p>                                                                                                |
| <p><b>primary</b><br/>[ˈpraɪməri]<br/>adj. 主要的<br/>同 principal,<br/>chief</p> | <p>His <b>primary</b> reason for studying was to get a better job.<br/>他念书的主要动机是想获得一份较好的工作。</p>                                                                                         |
| <p><b>purple</b>[ˈpɜːpl]<br/>n. 紫色</p>                                        | <p>The artist likes to use <b>purple</b> in his paintings.<br/>那个画家喜欢用紫色画画。</p>                                                                                                         |
| <p><b>reflect</b><br/>[rɪˈflekt]<br/>v. 1. 反射;反映<br/>2. 考虑<br/>同 think</p>    | <p>The sunlight was <b>reflected</b> from the water.<br/>阳光被水面反射回来。<br/>Take enough time to <b>reflect</b> before doing important things.<br/>在做重要的事情之前,先考虑一段时间。</p>                    |

|                                                                      |                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>require</b><br/>[rɪ'kwaɪə(r)]<br/>v. 需要<br/>同 need, demand</p> | <p>Every foreign student is <b>required</b> to take an English examination.<br/>每一个外国学生都必须考英文。</p> |
| <p><b>risk</b> [rɪsk]<br/>n. 危险</p>                                  | <p>There are always some <b>risks</b> in every adventure.<br/>每次冒险总是会有一些危险。</p>                    |
| <p><b>sauce</b> [sɔ:s]<br/>n. 酱</p>                                  | <p>The vegetables were eaten with a cheese <b>sauce</b>.<br/>蔬菜蘸着乳酪酱吃。</p>                         |
| <p><b>seek</b> [si:k]<br/>v. 寻找<br/>同 search, look for</p>           | <p>He is going to Canada to <b>seek</b> his fortune.<br/>他将到加拿大寻求发展。</p>                           |

**Exercise 23.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. The police opened a \_\_\_\_\_ through the crowd for the President.
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ cause of Tom's failure is his laziness.
3. After \_\_\_\_\_ for a time, he decided not to go.
4. All passengers are \_\_\_\_\_ to show their tickets.
5. Fishermen face a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ in their daily lives.

**【解答】** 1. passage      2. primary      3. reflecting  
4. required      5. risks

## ~~~~~ 《第五部分》 ~~~~~

**shriek** [ʃri:k] | A *shriek* of pain came from the wounded man.  
*n.* 尖叫声 | 受伤的人发出一声痛苦的尖叫。  
*v.* 尖叫 | The girls were all *shrieking* with laughter.  
 女孩们都边叫边笑着。

**snatch** [snætʃ] | The thief *snatched* her handbag and ran away.  
*v.* 抢夺 | 小偷抢了她的手提袋跑了。  
*n.* 抓住 | He made a *snatch* at the rope but missed.  
 他试着抓住绳子,可没抓到。

**spine** [spain] | His *spine* was broken in the accident.  
*n.* 脊椎 | 他的脊椎在那次意外中断了。

**stem** [stem] | The *stem* of a tree supports its branches and  
*n.* 干;茎 | leaves.  
 树干支撑着树枝和叶子。

**stumble** | He *stumbled* over a stone on the rough path.  
 [ˈstʌmbl] | 他被石头绊倒,跌倒在崎岖的路上。  
*v.* 跌倒

**sweep** [swi:p] | While her mother was cooking, Mary *swept*  
*v.* 消除 | the floor.  
 clean | 玛丽的母亲煮饭时,她扫地。

**territory** | Some people like to travel through unknown  
 [ˈterɪtəri] | *territory*.  
*n.* 地方 | 有些人喜欢到无人知道的地方去旅行。

|                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>torture</b><br/>[ˈtɔ:tʃə(r)]<br/>v. 拷问<br/>n. 痛苦</p>   | <p>Most of the civilized nations do not <b>torture</b> prisoners.<br/>大多数文明的国家不会拷问犯人。<br/>The sight of his sick brother was an unbearable <b>torture</b> to him. 他弟弟生病时的样子, 对他来说是一种无法忍受的痛苦。</p> |
| <p><b>twin</b>[twɪn]<br/>n. 双胞胎中的一个</p>                      | <p>I can't tell one <b>twin</b> from the other; they look just alike. 我无法分辨出这两个双胞胎, 他们长得几乎一样。</p>                                                                                               |
| <p><b>vine</b>[vaɪn]<br/>n. 藤; 蔓</p>                         | <p>Melons and pumpkins grow on <b>vines</b>.<br/>甜瓜和南瓜长在藤上。</p>                                                                                                                                 |
| <p><b>whip</b>[wɪp]<br/>v. 鞭打<br/>同 beat, lash<br/>n. 鞭子</p> | <p>The boy was <b>whipped</b> for telling a lie.<br/>那孩子因说谎而被鞭打。<br/>It is cruel to use a <b>whip</b> to punish a little child. 用鞭子惩罚小孩子是残忍的。</p>                                               |

**Exercise 23.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. He was \_\_\_\_\_ by his father for bad manners.
2. Much \_\_\_\_\_ in the northern part of Africa is desert.
3. Many bridges were \_\_\_\_\_ away by the floods.
4. If you are not careful, you'll \_\_\_\_\_ over that box.
5. The boy was \_\_\_\_\_ from his home by two armed men.

**【解答】** 1. whipped      2. territory      3. swept  
4. stumble      5. snatched

## 效果检测

**Exercise 23.6** 找出一个与其他三个不相关的词:

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. (A) lodge (B) dwell (C) reside (D) exist
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. (A) route (B) zone (C) path (D) passage
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. (A) primary (B) principal (C) practical (D) chief
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. (A) seek (B) require (C) need (D) demand
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. (A) seize (B) snatch (C) grasp (D) confirm
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. (A) fellow (B) comrade  
(C) delegate (D) companion
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. (A) capable (B) prompt  
(C) proficient (D) competent
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. (A) terror (B) danger (C) risk (D) peril
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. (A) unite (B) combine (C) join (D) command
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. (A) whole (B) complete (C) vast (D) entire

**【解答】** 1. D 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. D  
6. C 7. B 8. A 9. D 10. C

**Exercise 23.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词:

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. 专家  
(A) expert (B) comrade  
(C) companion (D) statesman
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. 土地  
(A) margin (B) property (C) horizon (D) territory
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. 清除  
(A) seek (B) sweep (C) sway (D) lash
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. 偏爱

- (A) emotion (B) trust (C) favor (D) comrade  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 5. 有效的  
 (A) candid (B) effective (C) practical (D) clever

**【解答】** 1. A 2. D 3. B 4. C 5. B

**Exercise 23.8** 找出一个与斜体词的意义相反的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. *hell*  
 (A) shortage (B) horizon (C) virtue (D) heaven
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. *construct*  
 (A) bother (B) destroy (C) acquire (D) establish
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. *peril*  
 (A) safety (B) favor (C) comfort (D) grief
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. *perish*  
 (A) dwell (B) stumble (C) repair (D) persist
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. *tiny*  
 (A) entire (B) primary (C) immense (D) effective

**【解答】** 1. D 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. C

**Exercise 23.9** 完整拼出下列句中所欠缺的单词：

1. We must try to o \_\_\_\_\_ e any kind of regulations. (遵守)
2. If you drive carefully, there is no r \_\_\_\_\_ k of accident. (危险)
3. Mirrors r \_\_\_\_\_ t our faces. (反映)
4. You'd better c \_\_\_\_\_ t a doctor when you are sick. (请教)
5. I felt i \_\_\_\_\_ t relief from pain after taking a dose of medicine.  
 (立刻的)

**【解答】** 1. observe 2. risk 3. reflect 4. consult  
5. instant

**Exercise 23.10** 找出一个与句中斜体词的意义最接近的单词:

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The building was completely *destroyed* in the fire.  
(A) defended (B) reflected  
(C) choked (D) demolished
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Do you give *credit* to his account of what happened?  
(A) confidence (B) favor  
(C) emphasis (D) interest
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The bird *fluttered* its wings in the cage.  
(A) snatched (B) flapped  
(C) lashed (D) reflected
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. He *choked* when a piece of meat stuck in his throat.  
(A) struggled (B) cried  
(C) stumbled (D) suffocated
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Do not *disturb* the baby; he is asleep.  
(A) bother (B) whip  
(C) approach (D) insult
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. He *declared* himself a member of their party.  
(A) indicated (B) announced  
(C) consulted (D) convinced
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. The boys *shrieked* when they saw the terrible accident.  
(A) hailed (B) disturbed  
(C) approached (D) screamed
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. The police *tortured* the man to make him confess the crime.  
(A) lashed (B) required

- (C) tormented (D) whipped
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. We saw the *immense* stature of the hero, thirty times life size.  
 (A) entire (B) huge  
 (C) divine (D) magnificent
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. I felt *grateful* for your help.  
 (A) competent (B) nervous  
 (C) proud (D) thankful

**【解答】** 1. D 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. A  
 6. B 7. D 8. C 9. B 10. D

**Exercise 23. 11** 将题前的斜体词转换为适当的词性, 填入空格内:

1. *require* Experience in a related field is a \_\_\_\_\_ for this job.  
 2. *reflect* He gave much \_\_\_\_\_ to the problem but still had no answer.  
 3. *observe* This telescope is used for the \_\_\_\_\_ of distant stars.  
 4. *disturb* You can work in here without any \_\_\_\_\_.  
 5. *destroy* The fire caused the \_\_\_\_\_ of two buildings.

**【解答】** 1. requirement 2. reflection 3. observation  
 4. disturbance 5. destruction

## LESSON 24

## 预备测验

◎选出最适当的答案：

1. He *declined* my offer to have lunch together, so I \_\_\_\_\_ have lunch with him.  
(A) may (B) may not
2. An *efficient* worker \_\_\_\_\_ time and money in doing his job.  
(A) saves (B) wastes
3. A *stupid* person behaves \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) bravely (B) foolishly
4. The room is like a *furnace*; it is terribly \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) hot (B) cold
5. \_\_\_\_\_ houses are more *permanent* than \_\_\_\_\_ houses.  
(A) Wooden, brick (B) Brick, wooden

## ◆ 解 答 ◆

1.B 2.A 3.B 4.A 5.B

## 《第一部分》

|                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>acquire</b><br>[ə'kwɪə(r)]<br>v. 取得<br> gain, obtain | He <b>acquired</b> the money for his trip by working at night.<br>他晚上工作以赚取旅行的费用。 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                    |                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>apron</b><br/>[ˈeɪprən]<br/>n. 围裙</p>        | <p>Wear an <b>apron</b> over the front part of your clothes to keep them clean while cooking.<br/>做饭时, 穿上围裙以保持衣服干净。</p> |
| <p><b>bead</b>[bi:d]<br/>n. 珠子</p>                 | <p>She is wearing a string of green <b>beads</b> around her neck.<br/>她在脖子上挂了一串绿色的珠子。</p>                               |
| <p><b>boundary</b><br/>[ˈbaʊndəri]<br/>n. 界线</p>   | <p>The new <b>boundaries</b> were fixed after the war.<br/>战后规定了新界线。</p>                                                |
| <p><b>career</b><br/>[kəˈrɪə(r)]<br/>n. 经历; 职业</p> | <p>We can learn much by reading about the <b>careers</b> of great men.<br/>阅读伟人的经历, 可以学到许多。</p>                         |
| <p><b>chop</b>[tʃɒp]<br/>v. 砍<br/>同 cut</p>        | <p>He was <b>chopping</b> wood into small, short pieces for burning.<br/>他将木头砍成小而短的木片, 作为烧火之用。</p>                      |
| <p><b>conceal</b><br/>[kənˈsi:l]<br/>v. 隐藏</p>     | <p>He <b>concealed</b> himself behind a large tree.<br/>他藏在一棵大树后。</p>                                                   |
| <p><b>contact</b><br/>[ˈkɒntækt]<br/>n. 接触</p>     | <p>If you bring fire into <b>contact</b> with gunpowder, there will be an explosion.<br/>如果你让火和火药接触, 就会发生爆炸。</p>        |
| <p><b>creep</b>[kri:p]<br/>v. 爬行</p>               | <p>We <b>crept</b> through the bushes towards the enemy.<br/>我们朝着敌军的方向, 爬行穿过丛林。</p>                                     |

|                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>decline</b> [di'klaɪn]<br><i>v.</i> 拒绝<br>同 refuse, reject<br>反 accept, consent | I said I would give him ten thousand dollars for the horse, but he <b>declined</b> my offer.<br>我说我会以 10,000 美元的价格买那匹马,可是他拒绝了我的提议。 |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**Exercise 24.1** 从第一部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. He tried to \_\_\_\_\_ the fact that he broke the window glass.
2. Churchill's \_\_\_\_\_ proves that he was a great man.
3. To bring fire into \_\_\_\_\_ with gasoline may cause an explosion.
4. The cat \_\_\_\_\_ quietly nearer to the bird, but the bird flew away.
5. I am sorry to \_\_\_\_\_ your invitation to dinner because I have to study for the examination.

**【解答】** 1. conceal 2. career 3. contact 4. crept  
 5. decline

《第二部分》

|                                                          |                                                                                            |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>detail</b> ['di:teɪl]<br><i>n.</i> 细节<br>同 particular | Everything in her story is correct to the smallest <b>detail</b> . 她的故事完全是真的,即使是最小的细节也不例外。 |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                        |                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>ditch</b> [dɪtʃ]<br><i>n.</i> 排水沟;沟 | A <b>ditch</b> is a long, narrow place dug in the earth to carry off water.<br>沟渠是在地上挖的细长构造,可用来排水。 |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                    |                                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>efficient</b><br>[ɪ'fɪʃənt]<br><i>adj.</i> 有效率的 | Our <b>efficient</b> new machines are cheaper than old ones.<br>我们有效率的新机器比旧的便宜。 |
|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

|                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>entitle</b><br/>[in'taɪtl]<br/>v. 定名</p>                    | <p>The author <i>entitled</i> his book "Treasure Island".<br/>作者将他的书定名为《金银岛》。</p>                                                                                      |
| <p><b>experiment</b><br/>[ɪks'perɪmənt]<br/>n. 实验</p>             | <p>Scientists test out theories by <i>experiments</i>.<br/>科学家借实验证明理论。</p>                                                                                             |
| <p><b>favorite</b> [ 'feɪvərɪt ]<br/>adj. 最喜爱的<br/>n. 最喜爱的人或物</p> | <p>What is your <i>favorite</i> flower?<br/>你最喜欢什么花?<br/>Among those records, Beethoven's Fifth Symphony is one of my <i>favorites</i>. 在那些唱片中, 贝多芬的第五交响曲是我最喜欢的之一。</p> |
| <p><b>foam</b> [fəʊm]<br/>n. 泡沫</p>                               | <p>The breaking waves make <i>foam</i> near the coast.<br/>碎浪在岸旁激起了水沫。</p>                                                                                             |
| <p><b>furnace</b> [ 'fɜːnɪs ]<br/>n. 火炉</p>                       | <p>An oil <i>furnace</i> heats our school buildings in winter.<br/>我们学校大楼在冬天使用油炉取暖。</p>                                                                                |
| <p><b>grave</b> [greɪv]<br/>n. 坟墓<br/>☐ tomb</p>                  | <p>We visited her <i>grave</i> and put flowers on it.<br/>我们为她扫墓, 并在上面放了一些花。</p>                                                                                       |
| <p><b>herd</b> [hɜːd]<br/>n. 兽群</p>                               | <p>We saw a big <i>herd</i> of cattle on the farm.<br/>我们看到农场上有一大群牛。</p>                                                                                               |

**Exercise 24.2** 从第二部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

1. We found a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of elephants running together.
2. We buried the dead cat in a little \_\_\_\_\_ dug in the backyard.
3. Some people learn by \_\_\_\_\_ and others by experience.
4. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ worker deserves good pay.

5. \_\_\_\_\_ are usually used to irrigate fields and carry off water.

【解答】 1. herd            2. grave            3. experiment  
4. efficient            5. Ditches

《第三部分》

|                                                      |                                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>import</b> [ɪm'pɔ:t]<br><i>v.</i> 输入, 进口          | The United States <i>imports</i> coffee from Brazil.<br>美国从巴西进口咖啡。                                    |
| ['ɪmpɔ:t]<br><i>n.</i> 输入, 进口                        | Last year we reduced the amount of <i>import</i> and expanded that of export.<br>去年我们降低了进口量, 并增加了出口。  |
| <b>instinct</b><br>['ɪnstɪŋkt]<br><i>n.</i> 才能       | He has an <i>instinct</i> for always doing and saying the right thing.<br>他有说话做事永不出错的本领。              |
| <b>joint</b> ['dʒɔɪnt]<br><i>n.</i> 连接处              | The <i>joints</i> of the chair were very loose.<br>那把椅子的连接处非常不牢。                                      |
| <b>latter</b> ['lætə(r)]<br><i>n.</i> 后者<br>囿 former | Of these two men, the former is dead, but the <i>latter</i> is still alive. 这两个男人, 前面一个已经死了, 后面一个还活着。 |
| <b>lonesome</b><br>['ləʊnsəm]<br><i>adj.</i> 寂寞的     | The old woman was <i>lonesome</i> without children.<br>那没有孩子的老妇人很寂寞。                                  |
| <b>masterpiece</b><br>['mɑ:stəpi:s]<br><i>n.</i> 杰作  | All of his paintings were considered <i>masterpieces</i> .<br>他所有的绘画作品都被认为是杰作。                        |

|                                                       |                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>miserable</b><br/>[ˈmɪzərəbəl]<br/>adj. 可怜的</p> | <p>The child is hungry, tired and homeless; he is a <b>miserable</b> child.<br/>那孩子又饿, 又累, 又无家可归; 他是个可怜的孩子。</p> |
| <p><b>naked</b>[ˈneɪkɪd]<br/>adj. 裸体的</p>             | <p>Some <b>naked</b> boys were swimming in the river.<br/>一些没穿衣服的男孩正在河里游泳。</p>                                  |
| <p><b>obtain</b>[əbˈteɪn]<br/>v. 获得</p>               | <p>It is necessary to <b>obtain</b> a permit to hunt or fish in this state.<br/>在这个国家里, 打猎或钓鱼必需获得许可。</p>        |
| <p><b>output</b>[ˈaʊtput]<br/>n. 产量</p>               | <p>What is the daily <b>output</b> of automobiles of this factory?<br/>这家工厂的每日汽车的产量是多少?</p>                     |

**Exercise 24.3** 从第三部分中选出最适当的一个单词, 填入空格内:

- \_\_\_\_\_ during the last five years were greater than exports.
- He fell and put his knee out of \_\_\_\_\_.
- Most animals have a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ to protect their young.
- The \_\_\_\_\_ sailor was all alone in a strange town across the sea from his home.
- Cold weather caused the leaves to fall and left the trees \_\_\_\_\_.

**【解答】** 1. Imports 2. joint 3. instinct 4. lonesome  
5. naked

## 《第四部分》

|                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>passionate</b><br/>         ['pæʃənət]<br/> <i>adj.</i> 热情的;<br/>         热烈的</p> | <p>They soon fell in <i>passionate</i> love with each other.<br/>         他们很快就陷入了热恋之中。</p>                                                      |
| <p><b>permanent</b><br/>         ['pɜ:mənənt]<br/> <i>adj.</i> 长期的</p>                  | <p>After doing temporary jobs for a month, he got a <i>permanent</i> position as a clerk in a store.<br/>         做了一个月的临时工后,他找到了一个当店员的长期工作。</p> |
| <p><b>populous</b><br/>         ['pɒpjʊləs]<br/> <i>adj.</i> 人口稠密的</p>                  | <p>China is one of the <i>populous</i> countries.<br/>         中国是人口稠密的国家之一。</p>                                                                 |
| <p><b>principle</b><br/>         ['prɪnsəpl]<br/> <i>n.</i> 原则; 主义</p>                  | <p>We are agreed in <i>principle</i> but not in detail.<br/>         我们在原则上是一致的,但在细节上不一致。</p>                                                    |
| <p><b>pursue</b><br/>         [pə'sju:]<br/> <i>v.</i> 追捕</p>                           | <p>The police are now <i>pursuing</i> the escaped prisoner.<br/>         警察正在追捕逃犯。</p>                                                           |
| <p><b>reform</b>[rɪ'fɔ:m]<br/> <i>v.</i> 改革</p>                                         | <p>The new president promised to <i>reform</i> the government. 新总统保证要改革政府。</p>                                                                   |
| <p><b>rescue</b>['reskju:]<br/> <i>v.</i> 解救</p>                                        | <p>The passengers were <i>rescued</i> from the sinking ship. 乘客们从快沉的船上被救起。</p>                                                                   |
| <p><b>rival</b>['raɪvəl]<br/> <i>n.</i> 对手</p>                                          | <p>The two boys were <i>rivals</i> for the first prize.<br/>         这两个男孩是争头奖的对手。</p>                                                           |

**saucy** ['sɔ:si] | The girl was **saucy** to her mother.  
*adj.* 1. 无礼的 那女孩对她的母亲没有礼貌。  
 2. 俊俏的 The girl was wearing a **saucy** new hat.  
 那女孩戴了顶俊俏的新帽子。

**seize** [si:z] | Mother **seized** the child by the arm.  
*v.* 1. 抓住 母亲抓住了孩子的手臂。  
 2. 扣押 The weapon hidden in the house were **seized**  
 同 confiscate by the police.  
 藏在屋中的武器被警方扣押。

**Exercise 24.4** 从第四部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. Brick walls are more \_\_\_\_\_ than wooden fences.
2. A \_\_\_\_\_ country has many people per square mile.
3. The flow of water in a river is explained by the \_\_\_\_\_ of gravity.
4. We should try to \_\_\_\_\_ criminals rather than punish them.
5. The fireman tried to \_\_\_\_\_ the child from the burning house.

【解答】 1. permanent      2. populous      3. principle  
 4. reform                      5. rescue

《第五部分》

**shut** [ʃʌt] | **Shut** the gate so that the dog can't get out.  
*v.* 关上 关上门,以免狗出去。  
 同 close 反 open

**soak** [səʊk] | She **soaked** the clothes before washing them.  
*v.* 1. 浸湿 她在洗涤前,先将衣服浸在水里。

|                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>2. 吸收<br/>  absorb</p>                                           | <p>Use this cloth to <b>soak</b> up the spilled milk.<br/>         用这块布将泼出的牛奶吸干。</p>                 |
| <p><b>spirit</b> ['spɪrɪt]<br/> <i>n.</i> 精神</p>                                                                                                     | <p>Though he is dead, he is with us in <b>spirit</b>.<br/>         虽然他已经死了,可是他的精神与我们同在。</p>          |
| <p><b>stepmother</b><br/>         ['stepɪməðə(r)]<br/> <i>n.</i> 继母</p>                                                                              | <p>Mary didn't get along with her <b>stepmother</b>.<br/>         玛丽和她的继母处得不好。</p>                   |
| <p><b>stupid</b><br/>         ['stju:pɪd]<br/> <i>adj.</i> 愚蠢的</p>                                                                                   | <p>It was <b>stupid</b> of you to run away from the accident.<br/>         他从意外事故中逃跑,真不聪明。</p>       |
| <p><b>swell</b> [swel]<br/> <i>v.</i> 膨胀<br/>  expand</p>         | <p>Wood often <b>swells</b> when it is wet.<br/>         木头浸湿时常会膨胀。</p>                              |
| <p><b>theme</b> [θi:m]<br/> <i>n.</i> 题目<br/>  topic, subject</p> | <p>The <b>theme</b> of his talk was <i>The Need of Education</i>.<br/>         他讲演的题目是《教育的需要》。</p>   |
| <p><b>tough</b> [tʌf]<br/> <i>adj.</i> 强壮的</p>                                                                                                       | <p>Only <b>tough</b> breeds of sheep can live in the mountains.<br/>         只有强壮品种的羊才能住在山中。</p>     |
| <p><b>twist</b> [twɪst]<br/> <i>v.</i> 缠绕</p>                                                                                                        | <p>She <b>twisted</b> her hair round her fingers to make it curl.<br/>         她将头发缠绕在手指上,使之卷曲。</p>  |
| <p><b>violence</b><br/>         ['vaɪələns]<br/> <i>n.</i> 暴力</p>                                                                                    | <p>The policeman had to use <b>violence</b> to arrest the murderer.<br/>         警察不得不使用暴力来逮捕凶手。</p> |

|                     |                                                    |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <b>whirl</b> [wɜ:l] | The dancer suddenly made a <b>whirl</b> .          |
| <i>n.</i> 旋转        | 舞蹈演员突然转了一圈。                                        |
| <i>v.</i> 回旋        | The leaves <b>whirled</b> in the wind.<br>树叶在风中打转。 |

**Exercise 24.5** 从第五部分中选出最适当的一个单词,填入空格内:

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ his eyes and tried to sleep.
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ is willing but the flesh is weak.
3. John's real mother died last year, and now he lives with his \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Her ankle \_\_\_\_\_ up after she fell down.
5. *Patriotism* was his \_\_\_\_\_ when he spoke at our school.

**【解答】** 1. shut 2. spirit 3. stepmother 4. swelled  
5. theme

## 效果检测

**Exercise 24.6** 找出一个与其他三个不相关的词:

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. (A) enduring (B) permanent  
(C) instant (D) perpetual
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. (A) chase (B) pursue (C) seek (D) seize
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. (A) acquire (B) obtain (C) save (D) gain
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. (A) theory (B) theme (C) topic (D) subject
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. (A) silly (B) efficient (C) stupid (D) foolish
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. (A) unclothed (B) passionate  
(C) bare (D) naked
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. (A) scheme (B) vocation (C) career (D) occupation
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. (A) entitle (B) name (C) reside (D) designate

- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. (A) miserable (B) populous  
 (C) wretched (D) pitiable
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. (A) resolve (B) decline (C) reject (D) refuse

**【解答】** 1. C 2. D 3. C 4. A 5. B  
 6. B 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. A

**Exercise 24.7** 找出一个与题前中文意思相同的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. 有效率的  
 (A) magic (B) efficient (C) clever (D) instant
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. 实验  
 (A) instrument (B) expedition  
 (C) project (D) experiment
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. 杰作  
 (A) expert (B) master (C) masterpiece (D) feast
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. 原则  
 (A) principle (B) principal (C) subject (D) theme
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. 本能  
 (A) emphasis (B) instinct (C) emotion (D) passion

**【解答】** 1. B 2. D 3. C 4. A 5. B

**Exercise 24.8** 找出一个与斜体词的意义相反的单词：

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. *latter*  
 (A) former (B) better (C) lower (D) slower
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. *temporary*  
 (A) lonesome (B) cold  
 (C) immediate (D) permanent

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. *reveal*

- (A) disclose (B) conceal  
(C) obtain (D) improve

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. *flesh*

- (A) rotten (B) bone (C) soul (D) stupid

\_\_\_\_\_ 5. *lose*

- (A) obtain (B) perish (C) tight (D) unite

**【解答】** 1. A 2. D 3. B 4. C 5. A

**Exercise 24.9** 完整拼出下列句中所欠缺的单词：

1. The stream forms a b \_\_\_\_\_ y between your land and mine. (界线)
2. Who is your f \_\_\_\_\_ e Chinese folk singer? (最喜爱的)
3. Have you been in c \_\_\_\_\_ t with your sister recently? (接触)
4. The fathers of our country were p \_\_\_\_\_ e believers in freedom. (热烈的)
5. I have to d \_\_\_\_\_ e your invitation because my mother expects me at home. (拒绝)

**【解答】** 1. boundary 2. favorite 3. contact  
4. passionate 5. decline

**Exercise 24.10** 选出最符合句意的一个单词：

1. The poet has \_\_\_\_\_ fame all his life, but has never experienced it.  
(A) concealed (B) declined  
(C) acquired (D) pursued

2. He \_\_\_\_\_ my hand and said how glad he was to see me.  
(A) seized (B) twisted (C) pursued (D) required
3. The boy's eyes were \_\_\_\_\_ with tears.  
(A) choked (B) drained (C) swollen (D) swept
4. He \_\_\_\_\_ a good knowledge of English by studying hard.  
(A) disturbed (B) acquired (C) revealed (D) demanded
5. He \_\_\_\_\_ the block of wood in two with a single blow.  
(A) twisted (B) snatched (C) chopped (D) crept
6. It is interesting to read the \_\_\_\_\_ of great men.  
(A) beads (B) boundaries (C) purples (D) careers
7. What is your \_\_\_\_\_ food?  
(A) passionate (B) favorite (C) populous (D) effective
8. The burglar \_\_\_\_\_ into the house and up the stairs.  
(A) rescued (B) whirled (C) crept (D) declined
9. Birds do not learn to build their nests but build them by \_\_\_\_\_.  
(A) instinct (B) passion (C) principle (D) theory
10. They started their holiday on a \_\_\_\_\_ day; it was cold and the rain never stopped.  
(A) stupid (B) saucy (C) wilful (D) miserable

**【解答】** 1. D    2. A    3. C    4. B    5. C  
6. D    7. B    8. C    9. A    10. D

## Vocabulary Fundamental

- A -
- abroad 1  
absolute 15  
academic 29  
accentuate 43  
accept 57  
accidental 71  
accompany 86  
accomplish 100  
accord 114  
account 128  
accustom 141  
ache 155  
achieve 169  
acid 312  
acquire 326  
actual 182  
additional 197  
admire 212  
admit 227  
advance 242  
advantage 257  
adventure 271  
advertise 285  
affair 298  
affect 1  
agency 15
- ahead 9  
aim 43  
alarm 57  
ambition 72  
amuse 87  
anchor 101  
angle 128  
ankle 141  
apparent 156  
appreciate 170  
approach 312  
apron 327  
ash 182  
aspect 197  
assemble 213  
assist 227  
assure 243  
atmosphere 257  
attach 271  
attack 285  
attempt 299  
attend 2  
attitude 16  
attraction 30  
audience 44  
author 58  
authority 72
- avoid 87  
awaken 101  
award 115  
aware 129
- B -
- bachelor 142  
barn 156  
basis 170  
battle 313  
bead 327  
beard 198  
beast 213  
beat 183  
behave 228  
biology 243  
bitter 272  
blacksmith 286  
blade 299  
blame 2  
blank 16  
blaze 30  
bless 44  
blind 58  
blossom 72  
blush 101  
boast 115  
bold 129
- bomb 87  
border 142  
bore 156  
bother 170  
bough 313  
boundary 327  
bowl 183  
brass 198  
bravery 213  
brilliant 243  
broad 258  
broadcast 272  
brook 286  
broom 299  
bubble 2  
bulk 16  
bundle 44  
burden 58  
bureau 72  
burial 87  
bush 101  
butcher 115
- C -
- cabin 129  
calm 142  
canal 156  
candle 170

|                   |                 |                 |                |
|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| capable 313       | clay 228        | conflict 2      | counterpart 87 |
| career 327        | colony 243      | confuse 16      | courage 102    |
| carpenter 183     | color-blind 258 | congress 30     | crack 115      |
| carve 198         | combine 272     | connect 44      | crash 129      |
| castle 213        | comfort 286     | conquer 58      | crawl 142      |
| cattle 228        | command 299     | conscience 73   | create 156     |
| cause 243         | commendation 2  | consent 87      | credit 313     |
| cautious 258      | commerce 16     | consequence 101 | creep 327      |
| cease 272         | commit 30       | consist 115     | crime 183      |
| ceiling 286       | communicate 44  | consolation 129 | critical 199   |
| cell 299          | companion 58    | consolidate 142 | crop 214       |
| cemetery 2        | comparison 72   | constant 156    | crude 228      |
| ceremony 16       | compel 87       | constitute 170  | cruel 244      |
| challenge 30      | compete 101     | consult 313     | crush 258      |
| characteristic 44 | competent 115   | contact 327     | cultivate 272  |
| charitable 58     | complain 129    | contain 183     | cunning 286    |
| charm 72          | complex 142     | contest 199     | cure 299       |
| chase 87          | compose 156     | contract 213    | curious 3      |
| cheat 101         | compound 170    | contrary 228    | curse 17       |
| cheek 115         | comrade 313     | contrast 244    | - D -          |
| cheer 129         | conceal 327     | contribute 258  | damp 30        |
| chew 142          | conceive 183    | converse 272    | darken 45      |
| chilly 156        | concern 198     | convert 286     | dash 59        |
| choice 170        | conclude 213    | convince 299    | dawn 73        |
| choke 313         | condemn 228     | cooperate 2     | deafen 88      |
| chop 327          | conduct 243     | copper 16       | debate 102     |
| circumstance      | conference 258  | correction 30   | debt 116       |
| 183               | confess 272     | correspond 45   | decay 129      |
| civil 198         | confine 286     | costume 58      | decent 143     |
| claim 213         | confirm 299     | cottage 73      | decisive 157   |

- |               |                   |                |                  |
|---------------|-------------------|----------------|------------------|
| deck 170      | differ 229        | draw 4         | energetic 89     |
| declare 313   | differentiate 245 | drift 17       | enforce 103      |
| decline 328   | digest 259        | drown 31       | engage 117       |
| decorate 184  | dignity 273       | dull 46        | enormous 130     |
| decrease 199  | dim 287           | dumb 60        | enterprise 144   |
| deed 214      | dip 300           | dusk 74        | entertain 158    |
| defeat 229    | direct 3          | dust 89        | enthusiastic 171 |
| defect 244    | disappear 17      | - E -          | entire 314       |
| defend 259    | disappoint 31     | earnest 103    | entitle 329      |
| delay 273     | discharge 46      | ease 116       | entrance 185     |
| delegate 286  | disclose 9        | echo 130       | envy 200         |
| delicate 300  | discourage 74     | edge 144       | equator 215      |
| delicious 3   | display 89        | edible 158     | equip 230        |
| delight 17    | dispose 103       | educate 171    | error 245        |
| demand 31     | dispute 116       | effective 314  | escape 260       |
| deny 45       | distinction 130   | efficient 328  | establish 274    |
| deposit 59    | distress 143      | elbow 184      | estate 287       |
| depress 74    | distribute 171    | election 200   | estimate 300     |
| derive 88     | district 157      | elegant 215    | event 4          |
| descend 102   | disturb 314       | elementary 230 | evidence 18      |
| describe 116  | ditch 328         | embrace 245    | evident 32       |
| deserve 130   | divide 184        | emergency 259  | excellence 46    |
| despair 119   | divine 200        | emotion 273    | exception 60     |
| desperate 157 | divorce 215       | emperor 287    | exchange 74      |
| despise 171   | doll 229          | emphasis 300   | exclaim 287      |
| destroy 314   | domestic 245      | empire 4       | excuse 274       |
| detail 328    | dot 259           | employ 18      | executive 260    |
| determine 184 | doubt 273         | encourage 32   | exhaust 245      |
| device 200    | drag 287          | endeavor 46    | exhibit 230      |
| devote 214    | drain 300         | endure 60      | exist 215        |

|                  |                |                 |               |
|------------------|----------------|-----------------|---------------|
| expedition 201   | federal 215    | foul 301        | gleam 75      |
| expense 185      | feed 230       | frank 4         | glimpse 89    |
| experiment 329   | festival 245   | freight 18      | glorious 104  |
| expert 315       | fetch 260      | frequent 32     | grace 117     |
| explode 172      | fiber 274      | frighten 47     | gradual 131   |
| explore 158      | fierce 288     | frost 75        | graduate 144  |
| export 144       | figure 301     | frown 89        | grand 158     |
| expose 131       | file 4         | frustrate 103   | grant 172     |
| express 117      | financial 18   | fulfil(l) 117   | grateful 315  |
| extend 103       | firm 32        | function 131    | grave 329     |
| extent 89        | fist 46        | fund 144        | greedy 185    |
| extraordinary 74 | flame 60       | fundamental 158 | grief 201     |
| extreme 60       | flash 75       | funeral 172     | grind 215     |
| - F -            | flatter 89     | fur 315         | grip 230      |
| fable 32         | flavor 103     | furnace 329     | groan 246     |
| faculty 18       | flee 117       | furnish 185     | grocery 260   |
| fade 46          | fleet 131      | fury 201        | guarantee 274 |
| failure 4        | flesh 144      | - G -           | - H -         |
| faint 74         | float 158      | gallery 215     | habit 288     |
| fairy 89         | flood 172      | gallop 230      | hail 300      |
| faithful 103     | flutter 315    | garment 246     | halt 5        |
| fancy 117        | foam 329       | gasp 260        | handy 18      |
| farewell 131     | fog 185        | gay 274         | harbor 32     |
| fasten 144       | folly 201      | gaze 288        | hardship 47   |
| fate 158         | forbid 215     | gem 300         | hardware 60   |
| fault 172        | force 230      | generate 4      | harness 75    |
| favor 315        | formation 245  | generous 18     | harvest 89    |
| favorite 329     | fort 260       | genius 32       | haste 104     |
| feast 185        | forthright 274 | ghost 47        | haunt 117     |
| feature 201      | fortunate 288  | glance 60       | hay 131       |

- |                |                 |                |               |
|----------------|-----------------|----------------|---------------|
| heal 144       | impulse 231     | interrupt 302  | - L -         |
| healthy 158    | incidental 247  | interval 6     | labor 33      |
| heap 172       | inclination 261 | intimate 19    | lack 62       |
| hell 315       | income 275      | introduce 33   | ladder 76     |
| herd 329       | independence    | invent 48      | lamb 90       |
| hesitate 185   | 289             | investigate 61 | lame 105      |
| hide 201       | indicate 301    | invite 76      | landlord 118  |
| hind 231       | individual 5    | involve 90     | landscape 132 |
| hire 246       | industrious 19  | irregular 105  | lane 145      |
| hollow 260     | inferior 48     | issue 118      | lantern 159   |
| holy 275       | influence 61    | item 132       | lap 173       |
| hop 288        | inform 76       | - J -          | lash 316      |
| horizon 301    | inhabit 90      | jar 145        | latter 330    |
| horn 5         | injure 104      | jealous 159    | launch 186    |
| horrible 19    | innocent 118    | jewel 173      | lawn 202      |
| howl 32        | inquire 132     | join 316       | leak 217      |
| huge 47        | insist 145      | joint 330      | lean 232      |
| humble 61      | inspire 159     | journal 186    | leap 247      |
| hymn 76        | instance 173    | journey 202    | leather 262   |
| - I -          | instant 316     | junior 216     | legal 276     |
| identify 104   | instinct 330    | jury 232       | leisure 289   |
| ignorant 132   | institution 186 | justice 247    | lessen 302    |
| illustrate 145 | instruct 202    | - K -          | liberal 6     |
| imagine 159    | instrument 216  | keen 261       | liberty 20    |
| immediate 172  | insult 231      | kindle 275     | lid 34        |
| immense 316    | intelligent 247 | kite 237       | lighten 48    |
| import 330     | intend 261      | kneel 302      | lightning 62  |
| impossible 186 | interest 275    | knot 6         | limb 76       |
| impression 202 | international   | knowledge 19   | liquid 90     |
| improve 216    | 289             |                | liquor 105    |

|                 |                 |                |                |
|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|
| literature 119  | masterpiece 330 | moderate 276   | nickname 20    |
| liver 132       | match 187       | modest 289     | nod 34         |
| loan 145        | material 203    | moist 302      | normal 62      |
| local 160       | mayor 217       | momentary 6    | nostril 77     |
| locate 173      | meantime 232    | monument 20    | notify 91      |
| lodge 316       | measure 247     | moral 34       | notion 105     |
| lonesome 330    | mechanic 262    | mortal 48      | numerous 119   |
| loss 187        | medium 276      | motion 62      | - O -          |
| lovely 202      | melt 289        | motive 77      | obey 133       |
| lower 217       | mend 302        | mount 91       | object 146     |
| loyal 232       | mental 6        | mourn 105      | objective 160  |
| luck 247        | mention 20      | multiply 119   | oblige 174     |
| lumber 262      | mercy 34        | murder 133     | observe 317    |
| lung 276        | merit 48        | muscle 146     | obtain 331     |
| - M -           | method 76       | mutual 160     | obvious 187    |
| machinery 289   | mighty 91       | mysterious 173 | occasion 203   |
| magic 302       | mild 105        | - N -          | occupy 217     |
| magnificent 6   | military 119    | nail 316       | occur 232      |
| majesty 20      | millionaire 133 | naked 331      | odd 248        |
| majority 34     | mingle 146      | native 187     | odor 276       |
| male 48         | minor 160       | navy 203       | offend 262     |
| mammal 62       | minute 173      | neat 217       | offer 290      |
| manage 76       | mirror 316      | needle 232     | official 303   |
| manly 105       | miserable 331   | negative 248   | omit 7         |
| manufacture 119 | misfortune 187  | neglect 262    | onion 20       |
| manuscript 133  | mislead 203     | nervous 290    | operate 34     |
| maple 146       | mistrust 217    | neighborhood   | opportunity 48 |
| marble 160      | mixture 232     | 276            | oppose 62      |
| marvel 173      | mock 247        | nest 302       | oral 77        |
| mast 316        | mode 262        | neutral 6      | orbit 91       |

- |                  |                 |                 |                |
|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| order 105        | passionate 332  | pickpocket 263  | precious 35    |
| ordinary 119     | pasture 188     | picturesque 277 | preface 49     |
| organization 133 | pat 204         | pigeon 291      | preparation 63 |
| origin 146       | patch 218       | pile 304        | preserve 78    |
| ornament 160     | path 233        | pioneer 7       | pressure 92    |
| outbreak 174     | patience 249    | pit 21          | pretend 106    |
| outlook 317      | pause 262       | pitch 35        | prevent 120    |
| output 331       | pave 277        | pity 49         | preview 134    |
| outstanding 187  | paw 290         | planet 63       | previous 147   |
| overall 217      | payroll 303     | plate 78        | priceless 161  |
| overcome 203     | peacock 7       | pledge 92       | priest 175     |
| overlook 233     | peak 21         | pluck 106       | primary 318    |
| owe 248          | pearl 35        | plunge 120      | principle 332  |
| owl 262          | peasant 49      | poetry 134      | privilege 188  |
| - P -            | peck 62         | poisonous 147   | procedure 204  |
| pace 276         | peculiar 78     | polish 133      | procession 218 |
| pack 290         | peer 91         | polite 174      | proclaim 234   |
| package 303      | penalty 106     | politician 318  | profession 249 |
| painful 34       | peninsula 120   | populous 332    | profit 263     |
| palace 49        | pepper 134      | port 188        | progress 277   |
| palm 62          | perceive 147    | portable 204    | project 291    |
| pang 77          | perform 161     | portion 218     | prompt 304     |
| paradise 91      | perilous 174    | positive 234    | pronounce 8    |
| paragraph 106    | perish 318      | possess 249     | proof 21       |
| pardon 120       | permanent 332   | pot 215         | property 35    |
| parliament 134   | personality 188 | pour 277        | proportion 50  |
| parlor 147       | persuade 204    | poverty 291     | proposal 63    |
| partial 161      | phrase 218      | practical 304   | prospect 78    |
| participate 174  | physical 233    | pray 7          | prosper 92     |
| passage 318      | physician 249   | preach 21       | protect 106    |

|               |               |                   |               |
|---------------|---------------|-------------------|---------------|
| protest 121   | reference 175 | reside 234        | ruin 50       |
| provide 134   | reflect 318   | resign 249        | rust 64       |
| province 147  | reform 332    | resist 264        | - S -         |
| publish 161   | region 189    | resolve 278       | sacred 93     |
| purchase 175  | register 205  | resort 8          | sacrifice 107 |
| purple 318    | regret 219    | responsibility 22 | saddle 121    |
| pursue 332    | reign 234     | restless 36       | saint 134     |
| puzzle 188    | reject 249    | resume 50         | sake 162      |
| - Q -         | rejoice 264   | retain 64         | salary 291    |
| quality 204   | relate 277    | retire 79         | sandwich 304  |
| quarrel 219   | relative 8    | retreat 93        | satisfy 175   |
| queer 234     | release 22    | reveal 107        | sauce 319     |
| quit 249      | relieve 36    | revenge 121       | saucy 333     |
| quiver 263    | religious 50  | reward 162        | savage 189    |
| quote 277     | remarkable 64 | ridiculous 148    | scarcity 205  |
| - R -         | remedy 78     | rifle 291         | scare 219     |
| race 8        | remind 92     | righteous 304     | scarf 235     |
| rag 21        | remove 107    | ripe 175          | scatter 250   |
| rage 35       | rent 121      | risk 319          | scent 264     |
| range 50      | repair 134    | rival 332         | scheme 278    |
| rapid 63      | repeat 162    | roast 189         | scorn 22      |
| rare 78       | replace 147   | rod 205           | scout 36      |
| raw 92        | reply 291     | role 219          | scrape 50     |
| realize 107   | represent 304 | rooster 234       | scratch 64    |
| rear 121      | request 175   | rotten 250        | scream 79     |
| reckless 134  | require 319   | rough 264         | screen 93     |
| recognize 162 | rescue 332    | royal 278         | screw 107     |
| recommend 147 | resemble 189  | rub 8             | seal 121      |
| reduce 291    | resent 205    | rude 22           | search 134    |
| refer 304     | reserve 219   | rug 36            | secret 162    |

- |                 |                |                |                |
|-----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| section 291     | silverware 219 | sour 51        | stalk 135      |
| secure 305      | similarity 235 | sow 65         | stare 163      |
| security 175    | sin 250        | spacious 80    | startle 149    |
| seek 319        | sink 264       | spare 94       | starve 292     |
| seize 333       | situate 278    | sparkle 108    | statesman 306  |
| sentiment 189   | situation 9    | spear 122      | steady 176     |
| series 205      | sketch 37      | specialist 135 | steer 206      |
| serious 219     | skill 51       | spell 163      | steep 190      |
| servant 235     | slant 64       | sphere 149     | stem 320       |
| severe 250      | slavery 80     | spider 292     | stepmother 334 |
| sew 264         | sleeve 93      | spill 306      | stern 220      |
| shadow 9        | slender 108    | spin 176       | stiff 236      |
| shallow 22      | slice 122      | spine 320      | still 251      |
| shame 36        | slight 163     | spirit 334     | sting 265      |
| sharp 50        | slip 148       | spit 190       | stir 279       |
| shave 64        | slope 292      | splendid 206   | stomach 9      |
| shed 79         | smart 305      | split 220      | stoop 23       |
| shelf 93        | smash 176      | spoil 235      | storage 37     |
| shell 108       | snarch 320     | spokesman 251  | stout 51       |
| shelter 122     | soak 330       | spot 265       | strain 65      |
| sheriff 135     | sob 190        | spray 279      | straw 80       |
| shield 163      | social 206     | spread 9       | strawberry 94  |
| shift 148       | sole 220       | sprinkle 23    | stream 108     |
| shoot 292       | solemn 235     | spy 37         | stretch 123    |
| shortage 305    | solid 251      | square 51      | strict 135     |
| shortcoming 176 | solution 265   | squirrel 65    | string 163     |
| shriek 320      | somewhat 279   | stability 94   | stroke 149     |
| shut 333        | sore 9         | staff 80       | structure 293  |
| silence 190     | soul 23        | stain 108      | struggle 306   |
| silly 206       | sound 37       | stake 122      | stuff 177      |

|                      |                    |               |                 |
|----------------------|--------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| stumble 320          | syllable 236       | throughout 23 | trick 123       |
| stupid 334           | symbolize 251      | thrust 38     | trim 136        |
| substantial 190      | sympathy 265       | thumb 52      | troop 164       |
| substitute 206       | - T -              | thunder 65    | troublesome 149 |
| subtract 220         | tale 279           | tick 80       | trust 293       |
| subway 236           | talent 10          | tide 94       | tune 307        |
| suck 251             | talkative 23       | tight 109     | turtle 177      |
| suffer 265           | tame 37            | timber 123    | twin 321        |
| suitable 279         | tangle 52          | tin 136       | twist 334       |
| suitcase 10          | tap 65             | tissue 164    | typical 191     |
| sum 23               | task 94            | toad 149      | - U -           |
| summon 37            | tasty 109          | toil 307      | union 207       |
| superintendent<br>52 | tavern 123         | torch 177     | unite 221       |
| supreme 65           | temper 136         | torture 321   | university 236  |
| surface 80           | temperature 164    | tough 334     | up-to-date 266  |
| surgeon 94           | temple 149         | tower 191     | urge 280        |
| surrender 109        | tender 293         | trace 207     | usage 10        |
| surround 123         | term 306           | trademark 236 | utter 24        |
| survey 136           | terrible 177       | tradition 221 | - V -           |
| suspect 163          | territory 320      | traffic 251   | vaccinate 38    |
| suspicion 149        | theme 334          | tragic 266    | vanish 52       |
| swallow 293          | thermometer<br>190 | tramp 279     | vapor 66        |
| sway 306             | thirst 207         | transfer 10   | variety 80      |
| sweat 177            | thorough 221       | transport 23  | vast 95         |
| sweep 320            | thread 236         | trap 38       | vein 123        |
| swell 334            | threat 251         | treaty 52     | venture 136     |
| swift 190            | thrill 265         | tremble 65    | verse 164       |
| swing 206            | throat 279         | tremendous 80 | vessel 150      |
| sword 220            | throne 10          | trial 94      | vest 293        |
|                      |                    | tribe 109     | vice 307        |

- |                |               |                |           |
|----------------|---------------|----------------|-----------|
| victim 177     | - W -         | welfare 177    | witty 52  |
| vine 321       | wage 38       | whip 321       | woe 66    |
| violence 334   | warfare 52    | whirl 335      | worm 81   |
| virgin 191     | warrior 66    | whisper 191    | worsen 95 |
| visible 207    | waterfall 81  | whistle 207    | wreck 109 |
| vision 221     | waterproof 95 | widow 221      | wring 124 |
| vocabulary 236 | weaken 123    | wilderness 236 | wrist 136 |
| volcano 251    | wealthy 136   | wil(l)ful 266  | - Y -     |
| volume 266     | weapon 109    | wipe 251       | yell 150  |
| vow 280        | weary 164     | witch 280      | yield 294 |
| vowel 10       | web 150       | withdraw 10    | - Z -     |
| voyage 24      | weed 293      | wither 24      | zone 307  |
|                | weep 307      | witness 38     |           |

## 本书所用国际音标符号对照表

表 1. 元音

|    |     |                 |
|----|-----|-----------------|
| 1  | ɪ   | b <u>it</u>     |
| 2  | e   | b <u>e</u> d    |
| 3  | æ   | c <u>a</u> t    |
| 4  | ə   | Ch <u>i</u> na  |
| 5  | ʌ   | c <u>u</u> t    |
| 6  | ɔ   | d <u>o</u> g    |
| 7  | ʊ   | f <u>oo</u> t   |
| 8  | i:  | m <u>ee</u> t   |
| 9  | ɑ:  | c <u>a</u> r    |
| 10 | ɜ:  | b <u>ir</u> d   |
| 11 | ə   | s <u>is</u> ter |
| 12 | ɔ:  | d <u>oo</u> r   |
| 13 | u:  | f <u>oo</u> d   |
| 14 | əʊ  | b <u>oa</u> t   |
| 15 | eɪ  | t <u>a</u> ke   |
| 16 | aɪ  | b <u>i</u> ke   |
| 17 | ɔɪ  | b <u>oy</u>     |
| 18 | aʊ  | h <u>ow</u>     |
| 19 | ɪə  | n <u>ear</u>    |
| 20 | eə  | p <u>ai</u> r   |
| 21 | ʊə  | p <u>oo</u> r   |
| 22 | ju  | p <u>ure</u>    |
| 23 | ju: | u <u>s</u> eful |
| 24 | aɪə | f <u>ir</u> e   |
| 25 | aʊə | s <u>ou</u> r   |

表 2. 辅音

|    |    |                  |
|----|----|------------------|
| 1  | p  | p <u>e</u> n     |
| 2  | b  | b <u>a</u> d     |
| 3  | t  | t <u>e</u> a     |
| 4  | d  | d <u>i</u> d     |
| 5  | k  | c <u>a</u> t     |
| 6  | g  | g <u>a</u> me    |
| 7  | tʃ | ch <u>a</u> in   |
| 8  | dʒ | J <u>a</u> ne    |
| 9  | f  | f <u>a</u> ll    |
| 10 | v  | v <u>oi</u> ce   |
| 11 | θ  | t <u>h</u> in    |
| 12 | ð  | t <u>h</u> en    |
| 13 | s  | s <u>o</u>       |
| 14 | z  | z <u>oo</u>      |
| 15 | ʃ  | sh <u>i</u> p    |
| 16 | ʒ  | m <u>eas</u> ure |
| 17 | h  | h <u>ow</u>      |
| 18 | m  | m <u>a</u> n     |
| 19 | n  | n <u>o</u>       |
| 20 | ŋ  | l <u>ong</u>     |
| 21 | l  | l <u>eg</u>      |
| 22 | r  | r <u>ed</u>      |
| 23 | j  | y <u>es</u>      |
| 24 | w  | w <u>et</u>      |